Driving pleasure so intense that motive performance becomes emotive performance - this is the gift that the LFA offers its owner. Equipped with an array of individualizing traits that combine state-of-the-art technology and old-world analog charm, the LFA was developed with enduring passion to be the realization of Lexus’ key concepts of “Joy” and “Leading edge”.

The LFA before you contains endless possibilities, waiting only for your command to transform dreams into reality. Knowing the LFA inside and out is the key to harnessing the LFA’s power and enjoying its full potential.

Instantaneous response perfectly in line with driver intentions.
Direct steering feel born from a rigid, lightweight body.
Complete confidence in the vehicle’s driving performance for the freedom to focus entirely on driving.
Engaging interaction through an infinite variety of meter messages.

These promises add a new layer of stimulus to the owner’s everyday life. Please think of this Owner’s Manual as the key to fulfilling these promises. The information contained here is a guide to keeping the LFA in its best possible condition, allowing you to enjoy the LFA’s traits and technologies long into the future. As you come to know more about the LFA, your relationship with this unique vehicle and your enjoyment in its company will surely increase.

Picture the LFA years from now.
May it be just as precious to you then as it is today.
Your Lexus dealer

Your Lexus dealer will provide quality maintenance and any other assistance you may require.
If there is not a Lexus dealer near you, please call the following number:

**U.S. OWNERS**
- In the U.S. mainland or Canada:
  Lexus Roadside Assistance
  1-800-25-LEXUS or 1-800-255-3987 (Toll-Free)
- In Hawaii:
  Servco Automotive Roadside Assistance/Customer Services
  1-800-25-LEXUS or 1-800-255-3987 (Toll-Free)

**CANADIAN OWNERS**
- In Canada or the U.S. mainland:
  Lexus Roadside Assistance/Customer Service
  1-800-26-LEXUS or 1-800-265-3987 (Toll-Free)

Please access our websites for further information.
- The U.S. mainland: www.lexus.com
- Hawaii: www.servcolexus.com
- Canada: www.lexus.ca

©2010 TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
All rights reserved. This material may not be reproduced or copied, in whole or in part, without the written permission of Toyota Motor Corporation.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Before driving</td>
<td>Adjusting and operating features such as door locks, mirrors, and steering column.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>When driving</td>
<td>Driving, stopping and safe-driving information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Interior features</td>
<td>Air conditioning and audio systems, as well as other interior features for a comfortable driving experience.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Maintenance and care</td>
<td>Cleaning and protecting your vehicle, performing do-it-yourself maintenance, and maintenance information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>When trouble arises</td>
<td>What to do if the vehicle needs to be towed, gets a flat tire, or is involved in an accident.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Vehicle specifications</td>
<td>Detailed vehicle information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>For owners</td>
<td>Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners, and seat belt and SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Index</td>
<td>Alphabetical listing of information contained in this manual.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Before driving

1-1. Key information
Keys ...................................................... 20

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors
Wireless remote control .......... 22
Doors.................................................... 25
Rear hatch.......................................... 29

1-3. Adjustable components
(seats, mirrors, steering wheel)
Seats ..................................................... 32
Seat belts ............................................ 36
Steering wheel................................... 41
Anti-glare inside rear view mirror ......................... 42
Outside rear view mirrors........ 43

1-4. Opening and closing the windows
Power windows................................. 46

1-5. Refueling
Opening the fuel tank cap ........ 49

1-6. Theft deterrent system
Engine immobilizer system ...... 53
Alarm.................................................... 55

1-7. Safety information
Correct driving posture .......... 59
SRS airbags ........................................... 61
Passenger occupant classification system ....... 72
Child restraint systems .......... 76
Installing child restraints ....... 80

2 When driving

2-1. Driving procedures
Driving the vehicle................. 88
Ignition switch............................... 98
ASG (Automated Sequential Gearbox) ........ 102
Turn signal lever............................ 112
Parking brake ......................... 113
Horn...................................................... 115

2-2. Instrument cluster
Gauges and meters .................... 116
Indicators and warning lights .................... 121
Using the menu......................... 124

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers
Headlight switch ................. 158
Windshield wipers and washer .......... 160
2-4. Using other driving systems
   Rear view monitor system ........ 163
   Driving assist systems .......... 166
   Active rear wing ................. 171
   Launch control ..................... 174

2-5. Driving information
   Cargo and luggage .............. 176
   Vehicle load limits .......... 179
   Winter driving tips .......... 180
   Trailer towing .................. 182
   Dinghy towing .................. 183

3. Interior features

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger
   Automatic air conditioning system (with navigation system) ................. 186
   Automatic air conditioning system (without navigation system) .......... 194
   Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers ...................... 201

3-2. Using the audio system
   Audio/video system some basics .................. 202

3-3. Using the interior lights
   Interior lights list ................. 207

3-4. Using the storage features
   List of storage features .......... 209
   • Glove box ....................... 210
   • Door pockets .................... 212

3-5. Other interior features
   Sun visors ......................... 213
   Power outlet ..................... 214
   Floor mats ....................... 215
   Luggage compartment features .................. 218
   Safety Connect ................... 219

4. Maintenance and care

4-1. Maintenance and care
   Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior .................. 228
   Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior ................ 235

4-2. Maintenance
   Maintenance requirements .... 240
   General maintenance .......... 242
   Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs .............. 246
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions ........................................ 247
Hood .............................................................................. 250
Positioning a floor jack .................................................. 253
Engine compartment ..................................................... 256
Adding washer fluid ...................................................... 264
Battery .......................................................................... 265
Tires ............................................................................. 270
Tire inflation pressure .................................................... 277
Wheels ........................................................................... 281
Air conditioning filter ..................................................... 283
Wireless remote control battery ....................................... 285
Checking and replacing fuses ......................................... 287
Light bulbs ..................................................................... 299

5-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers ......................................................... 302
If your vehicle needs to be towed .................................... 303
If you think something is wrong ....................................... 308
Fuel pump shut off system ............................................. 309
Event data recorder ....................................................... 310

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds... .................................................. 312
If a warning message is displayed .................................. 322
If you have a flat tire ...................................................... 332
If the engine will not start ............................................. 343
If you lose your keys/wireless remote control transmitter .................................................. 344
If the parking brake cannot be released ......................... 345
If the vehicle battery is discharged .................................. 348
If your vehicle overheat ............................................... 351
If the vehicle becomes stuck ......................................... 354
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency ........... 355
6 Vehicle specifications

6-1. Specifications
   Maintenance data
      (fuel, oil level, etc.).............. 358
   Fuel information..................... 368
   Tire information...................... 371

6-2. Customization
   Customizable features ............. 383

6-3. Initialization
   Items to initialize .................. 386

7 For owners

   Reporting safety defects
      for U.S. owners...................... 388
   Seat belt instructions for
      Canadian owners
      (in French).......................... 389
   SRS airbag instructions for
      Canadian owners
      (in French).......................... 391

Index

   Abbreviation list .................... 400
   Alphabetical index.................. 402
   What to do if... ..................... 415
Interior lights P. 207
Down light P. 207
“SOS” button *, * P. 219

Vanity mirror P. 213
Sun visors P. 213
Anti-glare inside rear view mirror P. 42

Bottle holder P. 211

Tilt sensor cancel switch P. 56

Tire pressure gauge P. 278

Penlight P. 211

USB port *, * AUX port *, *

Power outlet P. 214

*: If equipped
*: Refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.
With navigation system

- Navigation system *
- Rear view monitor system P. 163
- Air conditioning system P. 186
- Talk switch P. 191 *
- Emergency flasher switch P. 302
- Air conditioning system P. 186
- Audio system P. 202 *

Without navigation system

- Air conditioning system P. 194
- Emergency flasher switch P. 302
- Air conditioning system P. 194
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers  P. 201

Air conditioning system  P. 186, 194

Door lock switch  P. 25

Remote Touch *  P. 187

Power window switches  P. 46

*: If equipped
*: Refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.
Pictorial index

Paddle shift switches  P. 102

“ENGINE START” switch  P. 98

Gauges and meters  P. 116, 124

Glove box  P. 210

Control pad  P. 125

Parking brake switch  P. 113

Floor mats  P. 215

Horn  P. 115

Tilt and telescopic steering lock release lever  P. 41
Headlight switch  P.158

Reverse selector switch  P.103

Shift speed selector  P.107

Intermittent wiper interval adjuster  P.160

Windshield wiper and washer lever  P.160

Driving mode selector switch  P.105

AUTO driving mode button  P.105

Turn signal lever  P.112

Headlights low/high beam selector  P.158

Ignition switch  P.98
Pictorial index

Instrument panel

Rear hatch opener switch  P. 29

VSC off switch  P. 167

Outside rear view mirror switches  P. 43

Fuel filler door opener switch  P. 49

Hood lock release lever  P. 250
For your information

**Main Owner’s Manual**

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustration may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

**Noise from under vehicle after turning off the engine**

Approximately five hours after the engine is turned off, you may hear sound coming from under the vehicle for several minutes. This is the sound of a fuel evaporation leakage check and, it does not indicate a malfunction.

**Installation of a mobile two-way radio system**

As the installation of a mobile two-way radio system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as the multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, anti-lock brake system, SRS airbag system and seat belt pretensioner system, be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation.

**Grounding of the LFA**

Since the LFA is composed of CFRP (Carbon Fiber Reinforced Plastics) body parts, the body cannot be used as a ground terminal. As such, this vehicle has specialized ground terminals. Consult with your Lexus dealer for the locations of the specialized ground terminals available for this vehicle. Do not use any portion other than the specialized ground terminals for grounding, as doing so may cause a fire hazard.
Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. You should know that Toyota does not warrant these products and is not responsible for their performance, repair, or replacement, or for any damage they may cause to, or adverse effect they may have on, your Lexus vehicle.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Scraping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

Perchlorate Material

Special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Your vehicle has components that may contain perchlorate. These components may include airbags, seat belt pretensioners, and wireless remote control batteries.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CAUTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>General precautions while driving</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive considerately: Drive carefully and gently when a pregnant woman or a person suffering from heart disease or other illness that requires rest is on board.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>General precaution regarding children’s safety</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the accessory socket, the windows, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Symbols used throughout this manual

Cautions & Notices

⚠️ CAUTION

This is a warning against something which, if ignored, may cause death or serious injury to people. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of death or serious injury to yourself and others.

⚠️ NOTICE

This is a warning against something which, if ignored, may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your Lexus and its equipment.

Symbols used in illustrations

Safety symbol

The symbol of a circle with a slash through it means “Do not”, “Do not do this”, or “Do not let this happen.”

Arrows indicating operations

→ Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.

⇒ Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).
Before driving

1-1. Key information
  Keys..............................................  20

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors
  Wireless remote control ...... 22
  Doors ............................................ 25
  Rear hatch.................................... 29

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)
  Seats.............................................  32
  Seat belts ..................................... 36
  Steering wheel............................ 41
  Anti-glare inside rear view mirror ............... 42
  Outside rear view mirrors..... 43

1-4. Opening and closing the windows
  Power windows ............................. 46

1-5. Refueling
  Opening the fuel tank cap ..... 49

1-6. Theft deterrent system
  Engine immobilizer system.... 53
  Alarm............................................. 55

1-7. Safety information
  Correct driving posture ....... 59
  SRS airbags ................................. 61
  Passenger occupant classification system.......... 72
  Child restraint systems ............ 76
  Installing child restraints....... 80
1-1. Key information

**Keys**

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.

1. Premium master key
2. Master key
3. Valet key
4. Key number plate

### Alarm

Using the key or wireless remote control to lock the doors will set the alarm system.

### When required to leave a key to the vehicle with a parking attendant

Lock the glove box as circumstances demand. (→P. 210)

Carry the master key for your own use and provide the attendant with the valet key, as this key cannot be used to open the glove box.

### Key number plate

Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle. In the event that a key is lost, a new key can be made at your Lexus dealer using the key number plate. (→P. 344)
1-1. Key information

**NOTICE**

**To prevent key damage**

Observe the following:

- Do not subject the keys to strong shocks, expose them to high temperatures by placing them in direct sunlight, or get them wet.
- Do not expose the keys to electromagnetic materials or attach any material that blocks electromagnetic waves to the key surface.
- Do not disassemble the key.
1. Open, closing and locking the doors

Wireless remote control

The wireless remote control can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle from outside the vehicle.

1. Locks both side doors
2. Unlocks both side doors
   
   Pressing the button unlocks the driver’s door. Pressing the button again within 3 seconds unlocks the other door.

3. Opens the windows (press and hold)*
   
   *: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ Operation signals

The emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

■ Alarm

Using the key or wireless remote control to lock the doors will set the alarm system.

■ Wireless remote control battery depletion

If the wireless remote control function does not operate, the battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→P. 285)

■ Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 60 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the anti-theft system automatically locks the vehicle again.
1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

■ Conditions affecting operation

In the following situations, the wireless remote control may not operate properly:

● Near a TV tower, electric power plant, broadcasting station, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise, an audio or other radio wave emitting device or a large display

● When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device

● When multiple wireless remote controls are in the vicinity

● When the wireless remote control is in contact with, or is covered by certain metallic objects

● When another wireless remote control (that emits radio waves) is being used nearby

■ When riding in an aircraft

When bringing a wireless remote control function onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the wireless remote control while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying the wireless remote control in your bag etc, ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the wireless remote control to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

■ Customization that can be configured at your Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. door unlocking function and door lock buzzer sound) can be changed. (Customizable features → P. 383)
1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

- Certification for wireless remote control

  - For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.
    
    FCC ID: HYQ12BDH  
    FCC ID: HYQ13BDC
    
    NOTE:
    This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
    
    FCC WARNING:
    Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

  - For vehicles sold in Canada
    
    NOTE:
    Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.
1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

Doors

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the key, wireless remote control or door lock switch.

■ Key

Turning the key operates the doors as follows:

1. Locks both side doors
2. Closes the windows (turn and hold)*
3. Unlocks both side doors
   - Turning the key unlocks the driver’s door. Turning the key again unlocks the other door.
4. Opens the windows (turn and hold)*

*: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ Wireless remote control

→ P. 22

■ Door lock switch

1. Locks both side doors
   - Pulling on the inside door lever will open the door even when the door is locked.
2. Unlocks both side doors
   - The unlock indicator will come on when the doors are unlocked.
1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

**Automatic door locking and unlocking systems**

The following functions can be set or canceled:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Speed linked door locking function</td>
<td>Both side doors are locked when the vehicle speed is approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) or higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver’s door linked door unlocking function</td>
<td>Both side doors are unlocked when the driver’s door is opened within 10 seconds after turning the ignition switch to the “LOCK” position.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Setting and canceling the function**

To switch between setting and canceling, follow the procedure below:

**STEP 1** Close both side doors and turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position. (Perform step 2 within 20 seconds.)

**STEP 2** Check that Neutral is selected (→P. 103), press and hold the door lock switch ( or ) for about 5 seconds then release.

The switch positions corresponding to the desired function to be set are shown in the following table.

Use the same procedure to cancel the function.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Door lock switch position</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Speed linked door locking function</td>
<td>Press</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver’s door linked door unlocking function</td>
<td>Press</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the setting or canceling operation is complete, both side doors are locked and then unlocked.
Door unlock indicator

This indicator turns off when the doors are locked or 30 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the “LOCK” position.

Impact detection door lock release system

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, both side doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

If a wrong key is used

The key cylinder rotates freely to isolate the inside mechanism if a wrong key is inserted into the key cylinder and forcibly rotated.

Customization that can be configured at your Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed. (Customizable features → P. 383)

CAUTION

To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle. Failing to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Always use a seat belt.
- Always lock both side doors.
- Ensure that both side doors are properly closed.
- Do not pull the lever of the doors while driving.
  The doors may be opened and the passengers are thrown out of the vehicle and it may result in serious injury or death.
  Be especially careful for both side doors, as the doors may be opened even if the door lock switch is locked.

When opening or closing the doors

Be careful not to get your fingers or nails caught between the door handle and door panel.
1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

⚠️ NOTICE

When entering or exiting your vehicle

Be careful not to kick or step on the vehicle body as doing so may cause damage to the vehicle and its coating. Be especially careful with the rocker molding when entering or exiting the vehicle, as it may be easily hit.
1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors
Rear hatch

The rear hatch can be opened using the rear hatch opener switch.

Press the opener switch.

If the rear hatch opener switch is inoperable

STEP 1

Remove the cover.

STEP 2

Pull the cable.

Internal rear hatch release lever

The rear hatch can be opened by pulling on the glow-in-the-dark lever located on the inside of the luggage compartment.

The lever will continue to glow for some time after the rear hatch is closed.
1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

CAUTION

■ Caution while driving
- Keep the rear hatch closed while driving. If the rear hatch is left open, it may hit near-by objects while driving or luggage may be unexpectedly thrown out, causing an accident. In addition, exhaust gases may enter the vehicle, causing death or a serious health hazard. Make sure to close the rear hatch before driving.
- Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the rear hatch is fully closed. If the rear hatch is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving, causing an accident.
- Never let anyone sit in the luggage compartment. In the event of sudden braking or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

■ When children are in the vehicle
- Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.
- Do not leave children alone in the luggage compartment. If a child is accidentally locked in the luggage compartment, they could have heat exhaustion.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the rear hatch. Doing so may cause the rear hatch to operate unexpectedly, or cause the child’s hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing rear hatch.
CAUTION

■ Using the luggage compartment

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in serious injury.

● Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the rear hatch before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the rear hatch to fall closed again after it is opened.

● When opening or closing the rear hatch, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.

● If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the rear hatch is about to open or close.

● Use caution when opening or closing the rear hatch in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.

● The rear hatch may fall if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the rear hatch on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the rear hatch unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the rear hatch is fully open and secure before using the luggage compartment.

● When closing the rear hatch, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.

● When closing the rear hatch, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface.

● Do not attach any accessories to the rear hatch. Such additional weight on the rear hatch may cause the rear hatch to fall closed again after it is opened.
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Seats

1. Seat position switch
2. Seatback angle switch
3. Seat cushion (front) angle switch
4. Vertical height adjustment switch
5. Seatback fold and return switch (→ P. 33)
6. Seat heater temperature adjustment dial

When the dial is rotated, the indicator light comes on. The higher the number is, the warmer the seat becomes.
**Seatback fold and return**

To enable easier loading and unloading of luggage, the seats can be moved using the seatback fold and return switch. A buzzer will sound once the seat starts moving.

1. **Fold**
   
   Press the switch to fold the seatback down and move the seat forward.

2. **Return**
   
   Press the switch to return the seat to its former position.

**Power easy access system***

When the driver enters and exits the vehicle, the driver’s seat will automatically perform the following operations:

Exiting the vehicle: When the key is removed from the ignition switch, the driver’s seat will move backward (auto away function).

Entering the vehicle: When the key is inserted into the ignition switch, the driver’s seat will move forward (auto return function).

*: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

- The seat heaters can be used when
  The ignition switch is in the “ON” position.

- When the seat heater is not in use
  Set the dial at “0”. The indicator light goes off.

- Seatback fold and return switch
  When the doors are closed, the seatback fold and return switch cannot be used to fold the seatbacks. However, the passenger seat can be returned using the seatback fold and return switch even when the door is closed.

- When using the seatback fold and return switch
  In order to enable easier loading and unloading of luggage, the seat belt can be released from its seat belt guide. After pulling the upper part of the seat belt guide away from its magnet, release the seat belt.

- Stopping the seat folding operation partway
  Operate a seat adjustment switch.

- The auto away function for exiting the driver seat
  If the seat is already close to the rearmost position, the auto away function may not operate when the driver exits the vehicle.

- Customization
  The power easy access system can be activated/deactivated.
  (Customizable features → P. 383)

⚠️ CAUTION

- Seat adjustment
  Do not recline the seat more than necessary when the vehicle is in motion to reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt.
  If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

- Seatback fold and return switch
  Never operate the seat fold switch while the seat is occupied, as the occupant may become jammed in the seat, resulting in serious injury.
### CAUTION

**If the seat belt guide is disengaged**
- Make sure that the seat belt guide is securely fixed before driving.
- After using the seatback fold and return switch, make sure that the seat belt passes through the seat belt guide.

**Avoiding burns when using the seat heaters**
- Use caution when seating the following persons in a seat with the seat heater on to avoid the possibility of burns:
  - Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
  - Persons with sensitive skin
  - Persons who are fatigued
  - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)
- Do not cover the seat with anything when using the seat heater.
  Using the seat heater with a blanket or cushion increases the temperature of the seat and may lead to overheating.
- Do not use the seat heater more than necessary. Doing so may cause minor burns or overheating.

### NOTICE

**To prevent seat heater damage**
Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

**To prevent battery discharge**
Turn the seat heaters off when the engine is not running.
Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

■ Correct use of the seat belts

- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

■ Fastening and releasing the seat belt

1. Fastening the belt
   Push the tab into the buckle until a clicking sound is heard.

2. Releasing the belt
   Press the release button.
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Seat belt guide

When fastening the seat belt, always ensure that it passes through the seat belt guide.

The seat belt can be released from its seat belt guide as necessary. (→P. 34)

Seat belt pretensioners

The pretensioner helps the seat belt to quickly restrain the occupant by retracting the seat belt when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal collision.

The pretensioner may not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a side impact or a rear impact.

Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward or pull out the belt too quickly. Allow the belt to fully retract, and then slowly extend the belt. If the belt cannot be pulled out of the retractor, firmly pull the belt and release it. You will then be able to smoothly pull the belt out of the retractor.
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

■ Automatic locking retractor (ALR)
When a passenger’s lap belt is completely extended and then retracted even slightly, the belt is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the child restraint system (CRS) firmly. To free the belt again, fully retract the belt and then pull the belt out once more. (→P. 80)

■ Pregnant women

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 36)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and position the belt across the chest. Avoid belt contact over the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.

■ People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way.

■ Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle are principally designed for persons of adult size.

● Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle’s seat belt. (→P. 76)

● When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle’s seat belt, follow the instructions on P. 36 regarding seat belt usage.

■ Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

■ Seat belt regulations

If seat belt regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus dealer for seat belt replacement or installation.
**CAUTION**

- Wearing a seat belt
  
  Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident. Failing to do so may cause death or severe injury.
  
  - Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
  - Always wear a seat belt properly.
  - Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
  - Do not recline the seat any more than necessary to achieve a proper seating position. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
  - Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
  - Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

- Seat belt pretensioners
  
  - Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the passenger’s seat. Doing so will disperse the passenger’s weight, which prevents the sensor from detecting the passenger’s weight properly. As a result, the seat belt pretensioner for the passenger’s seat may not activate in the event of a collision.
  
  - If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer.
■ Child restraint lock function belt precaution

Do not allow children to play with the child restraint lock function belt. If the belt becomes twisted around a child’s neck, it will not be possible to pull the belt out leading to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt behind the seat belt guide.

■ Seat belt damage and wear

● Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.

If the seat belt is damaged, the built-in SRS seat belt airbag may not inflate in an accident.

● Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.

● Ensure that the belt and tab are locked and the belt is not twisted.

If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.

● If your vehicle has been involved in an accident, have the seat assembly including the belts inspected at your Lexus dealer even if there is no obvious damage.

● Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling of the pretensioner may prevent it from operating properly resulting in death or serious injury.

■ When using the seat belt guide

● Always make sure that the belt is not twisted, and runs freely through the guide.

● Always make sure the seat belt passes through the seat belt guide. If the seat belt is not passing through the seat belt guide correctly and the SRS airbags are inflated, the SRS seat belt airbag may not inflate correctly, resulting in death or serious injury.
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position.

**STEP 1**

Hold the steering wheel and push the lever down.

**STEP 2**

Adjust to the ideal position by moving the steering wheel horizontally and vertically.

After adjustment, pull the lever up to secure the steering wheel.

---

**CAUTION**

- **Caution while driving**
  
  Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving. Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- **After adjusting the steering wheel**
  
  Make sure that the steering wheel is securely locked. Otherwise, the steering wheel may move suddenly, possibly causing an accident, and resulting in death or serious injury.
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Anti-glare inside rear view mirror

Glare from the headlights of vehicles behind can be reduced by operating the tab:

1 Normal position
2 Anti-glare position

⚠ CAUTION

Caution while driving

Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving. Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Outside rear view mirrors

Mirror angle can be adjusted using the switch.

**STEP 1**

To select a mirror to adjust, press the switch.

1. Left
2. Right

**STEP 2**

To adjust the mirror, press the switch.

1. Up
2. Left
3. Down
4. Right

**Folding the mirrors**

Push the mirror back in the direction of the vehicle’s rear.
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

■ The mirrors can be adjusted when
The ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

■ Rain clearing mirrors
When water droplets collects on the mirror surface, for example when it rains, the rain clearing (hydrophilic) effect of the mirrors causes the droplets to be spread out into a film making the rear view clearer. In the following cases, the rain clearing effect will be reduced temporarily, but will return after 1 or 2 days’ exposure to direct sunlight.
- After wiping dirt off the mirrors
- When the mirrors fog up
- After your vehicle has been parked for a long period in underground parking lots etc. where there is no direct sunlight

■ When the mirrors are fogged up
Turn on the mirror defoggers to defog the mirrors. (*→P. 201)

⚠️ CAUTION

■ When driving the vehicle
Observe the following precautions while driving. Failing to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded back.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

■ When a mirror is moving
To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

■ When the mirror defoggers are operating
Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.
NOTICE

- If the mirrors become iced up

In order to retain the rain-clearing properties of the mirror, do not attempt to scrape the ice off. Instead, remove it by turning on the mirror defoggers or by applying warm water.
1-4. Opening and closing the windows

Power windows

The power windows can be opened and closed using the following switches.

1. Closing
2. One-touch closing*
3. Opening
4. One-touch opening*

*: Pushing the switch in the opposite direction will stop window travel partway.

- The power windows can be operated when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position.

- Door lock linked window operation
  - The power windows can be opened or closed using the key. (→ P. 25)
  - The power windows can be opened using the wireless remote control. (→ P. 22)

- Operating the power windows after turning the ignition switch off
  The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the ignition switch is turned to the “ACC” or “LOCK” position. They cannot, however, be operated once either side door is opened.

- Jam protection function
  If an object becomes caught between the window and the body, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.
When the power window does not close normally

If the jam protection function is operating abnormally and a window cannot be closed, perform the following operations using the power window switch on the relevant door.

- After stopping the vehicle, the window can be closed with the door closed by holding the power window switch in the one-touch closing position while the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position.
- If the window still cannot be closed even by carrying out the operation explained above, initialize the function by performing the following procedure.

**STEP 1** Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position. Continue holding the switch for a further 6 seconds after the window has closed.

**STEP 2** Hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening position. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has opened completely.

**STEP 3** Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position once again. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has closed.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, start again from the beginning.
If the window continues to close but then re-open slightly even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Customization that can be configured at your Lexus dealer

Settings of the linked key and wireless remote control operation can be changed.
(Customizable features → P. 383)
1-4. Opening and closing the windows

CAUTION

■ Closing the windows
   Observe the following precautions. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.
   ● Check to make sure that the passenger does not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
   ● Do not allow children to operate the power windows. Closing a power window on someone can cause serious injury, and in some instances, even death.

■ Jam protection function
   ● Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
   ● The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes.
Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap.

- **Before refueling the vehicle**
  Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK” position and ensure that both side doors and windows are closed.

- **Opening the fuel tank cap**

  **STEP 1**
  Press the opener switch.

  **STEP 2**
  Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open.

  **STEP 3**
  Hang the fuel tank cap on the back of the fuel filler door.
1-5. Refueling

Closing the fuel tank cap

After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.

When the fuel filler door opener switch is inoperable

The lever can be used to open the fuel filler door if the fuel filler door cannot be opened using the inside switch because the battery is discharged or for any other reason.

**STEP 1**  Open the rear hatch. (→ P. 29)

**STEP 2**  Remove the cover.

**STEP 3**  Pull the lever.
CAUTION

- When refueling the vehicle
  Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.
  - Touch a metal surface (such as a static discharge plate if available) to discharge any static electricity. As the vehicle body is made of resin touching the vehicle body will not discharge static electricity. Sparks resulting from discharging static electricity may cause the fuel vapors to ignite.
  - Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out the filler neck and cause injury.
  - Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their bodies to come close to an open fuel tank.
  - Do not inhale vaporized fuel. Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
  - Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle. Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
  - Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged. This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

- When refueling
  Securely insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck. When the fuel tank is filled to the maximum level, the automatic shut off function will engage. Do not continue fueling once the automatic shut off function engages, as this may result in fuel overflowing from the tank.

- When replacing the fuel cap
  Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.
### NOTICE

**Refueling**

- Use only the specified premium-unleaded (unleaded high-octane) gasoline. Never use regular unleaded gasoline, poor quality gasoline, diesel fuel, kerosene, any type of alcohol-based fuel, or any type of fuel other than that specified for this vehicle. Also, be careful not to mix up the fuel and washer fluid. Failure to follow these precautions may cause damage to the vehicle.

- Do not spill fuel, as it may damage the vehicle’s painted surface.
1-6. Theft deterrent system

Engine immobilizer system

The vehicle’s keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if the key has not been previously registered in the vehicle’s on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

■ Setting and canceling the engine immobilizer system

U.S.A.
The system will set after the key has been removed from the ignition switch.
The system will be canceled when the registered key is inserted into the ignition switch.

Canada

The indicator light flashes after the key has been removed from the ignition switch to indicate that the system is operating.
The indicator light stops flashing after the registered key has been inserted into the ignition switch to indicate that the system has been canceled.

■ System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type engine immobilizer system.

■ Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction

● If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object
● If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle
Certifications for the engine immobilizer system

- For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.
  
  FCC ID: MOZRI-33BTY

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

- For vehicles sold in Canada

  Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

NOTICE

To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.
1-6. Theft deterrent system

Alarm

The system sounds the alarm and flashes the lights when forcible entry is detected.

- **Triggering of the alarm**
  The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:
  - A locked door is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the wireless remote control or key.
  - The hood or rear hatch is opened.
  - The tilt sensor detects a change of vehicle inclination.

- **Setting the alarm system**
  Close the doors, rear hatch and hood, and lock both side doors. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.
  The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.

- **Deactivating or stopping the alarm**
  Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm.
  - Unlock the doors.
  - Start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)
1-6. Theft deterrent system

**Tilt sensor**

The tilt sensor detects changes in vehicle inclination, such as when the vehicle is towed away.

This system is designed to deter and prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all tilts.

The tilt sensor can be canceled using the cancel switch.

**Canceling the tilt sensor**

Remove the key from the ignition switch and press the tilt sensor cancel switch in the glove box.

To set the alarm with the tilt sensor disabled, the alarm must be set within 5 minutes after canceling the sensor.

The tilt sensor will revert to on each time the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position.

To cancel the tilt sensor, perform the necessary procedure each time canceling the sensors is desired.
■ System maintenance
The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

■ Items to check before locking the vehicle
To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following.
● Nobody is in the vehicle.
● The windows are closed before the alarm is set.
● No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

■ Triggering of the alarm
The alarm may be triggered in the following situations.
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)
● A person inside the vehicle opens a door, rear hatch or hood.

● The battery is disconnected.

■ Alarm-operated door lock
● When the alarm is operating, the doors are locked automatically to prevent intruders.
● Do not leave the key inside the vehicle when the alarm is operating, and make sure the key is not inside the vehicle when recharging or replacing the battery.
The alarm cannot be set when
In the following situations, the alarm cannot be set. Be careful if the vehicle will not be used for an extended period of time.
- When a battery terminal is disconnected
- When the “D/C CUT” fuse is removed

Canceling and automatic re-enabling of the tilt sensor
- The alarm will still be set even when the tilt sensor is canceled.
- After the tilt sensor is canceled, turning the ignition switch to the “ON” position or unlocking the doors using the wireless remote control or key will re-enable the tilt sensor.
- When the alarm system is set again, the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will be set.

Tilt sensor detection considerations
The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations. Cancel the tilt sensor as necessary.
- The vehicle is transported by a ferry, a flatbed track, train, etc.
- The vehicle is parked in a parking garage.
- Any of the tires loses air pressure.
- The vehicle is jacked up.
- An earthquake occurs or the road caves in.

NOTICE

To ensure the system operates correctly
Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.
1-7 Safety information

Correct driving posture

Drive in a good posture as follows:

1. Sit upright and well back in the seat. (→P.32)
2. Adjust the position of the seat forward or backward to ensure the pedals can be reached and easily depressed to the extent required. (→P.32)
3. Adjust the seatback so that the controls are easily operable. (→P.32)
4. Adjust the tilt and telescopic positions of the steering wheel downward so the airbag is facing your chest. (→P.41)
5. Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P.36)
### CAUTION

#### While driving
- Do not adjust the position of the driver’s seat while driving. Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback. A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury to the driver or passenger.
- Do not place anything under the seats. Objects placed under the seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury. The adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.

#### Adjusting the seat position
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury. Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.
1-7. Safety information

**SRS airbags**

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

**1** SRS driver airbag/passenger airbag

- Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and passenger from impact with interior components.

**2** SRS driver’s knee airbag

- Can help provide driver protection.
SRS seat belt airbags
Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and passenger from impact with interior components.
Your vehicle is equipped with ADVANCED AIRBAGS designed based on US motor vehicle safety standards (FMVSS208). The airbag system controls airbag deployment power for the driver and passenger. The driver airbag system consists of the driver’s seat position sensor etc. The passenger’s airbag system consists of the passenger occupant classification sensor etc.
The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and an airbag sensor.

In certain types of severe frontal or side impacts, the SRS airbag system triggers the airbag inflators. A chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

- If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)
  - Bruising and slight abrasions may result from contact with a deploying (inflating) SRS airbag.
  - A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
  - Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the seats may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
  - The windshield may crack.
  - For Safety Connect subscribers, if the SRS airbags deploy or in the event of a severe rear-end collision, the system is designed to send an emergency call to the response center, notifying them of the vehicle’s location (without needing to push the “SOS” button) and an agent will attempt to speak with the occupants to ascertain the level of emergency and assistance required. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency and helps to dispatch the necessary emergency services. (→P. 219)
**SRS airbag deployment conditions**

- The SRS front airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to a 12 - 18 mph [20 - 30 km/h] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform). In addition, the SRS seat belt airbags will also deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 3300 lb. [1500 kg] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 12 - 18 mph [20 - 30 km/h]).

  However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher if the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact, or if the vehicle is involved in an underride collision (e.g. a collision in which the front of the vehicle “underrides”, or goes under, the bed of a truck, etc.).

- It is possible that in some collisions where the forward deceleration of the vehicle is very close to the designed threshold level, the SRS front airbags and the seat belt pretensioners may not activate together.

- The SRS passenger airbag will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the passenger seat. However, the passenger airbag may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, or the seat belt is fastened, even if the seat is unoccupied. (→ P. 72)

**Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision**

The SRS front airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or vehicle falling
Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbag (except SRS seat belt airbags)

In situations similar to the examples shown in the illustration and description below, the SRS front airbags are generally not designed to inflate. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.

- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover
- Low-speed frontal collision

Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS seat belt airbags)

The seat belt airbag will not deploy if the seat belt is not fastened. Also, the SRS seat belt airbags are not generally designed to inflate in the following situations. However, deployment of the SRS seat belt airbags may occur should the vehicle be subjected to a strong impact in a side collision, as well as when a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle.

- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover
- Low-speed side collision
- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
When to contact your Lexus dealer

In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible:

- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.
  
  - The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS airbags to inflate.
  
  - The seat belt is torn, worn or otherwise damaged in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS seat belt airbags to inflate.
  
  - The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the passenger airbag, lower portion of the instrument panel, or the seat belt is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.
CAUTION

SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the airbags. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and passenger in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration ("NHTSA") advises:

  Since the risk zone for the driver airbag is the first 2 - 3 in. (50 - 75 mm) of inflation, placing yourself 10 in. (250 mm) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 10 in. (250 mm) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

  - Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
  - Slightly recline the back of the seat.
    Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 10 in. (250 mm) distance, even with the driver’s seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
  - If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

The seat should be adjusted as recommended by NHTSA above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.
CAUTION

**SRS airbag precautions**

- The SRS passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the passenger is very close to the airbag. The passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the passenger sits upright.

- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be properly restrained. The rear seats are the safest for infants and children. (→P. 76)

- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.

- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a passenger.

- Do not drive the vehicle while the driver or passenger have items resting on their knees.

- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad, seat belt, or lower portion of the instrument panel. These items can become projectiles when SRS driver, passenger, seat belt and knee airbags deploy.
1-7. Safety information

CAUTION

SRS airbag precautions

- Wear the seat belt correctly.
- If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not wrap seat belt covers or other such items around the area where the SRS seat belt air bag will inflate.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components shown on P. 63. Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbag has deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and/or seat belt, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.
■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer.
The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags.
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard or seat belt.
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender or front bumper.
- Installation of snow plows, winches, etc. to the front grille (bull bars, kangaroo bar etc.).
- Modifications to the vehicle’s suspension system.
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios or CD players.
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability.
1-7. Safety information

Passenger occupant classification system

Your vehicle is equipped with a passenger occupant classification system. This system detects the conditions of the passenger seat and activates or deactivates the devices for the passenger.

1 SRS warning light
2 “AIR BAG ON” indicator light
3 “AIR BAG OFF” indicator light
4 Passenger’s seat belt reminder light
### Condition and operation in the passenger occupant classification system

**Adult*1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator/ warning light</th>
<th>“AIR BAG ON” and “AIR BAG OFF” indicator lights</th>
<th>“AIR BAG ON”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SRS warning light</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passenger’s seat belt reminder light</td>
<td>Flashing*2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Passenger airbag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat belt airbag on the passenger seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passenger’s seat belt pretensioner</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Child *3 or child restraint system*4**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator/ warning light</th>
<th>“AIR BAG ON” and “AIR BAG OFF” indicator lights</th>
<th>“AIR BAG OFF”*5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SRS warning light</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passenger’s seat belt reminder light</td>
<td>Flashing*2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Passenger airbag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat belt airbag on the passenger seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passenger’s seat belt pretensioner</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Unoccupied**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator/ warning light</th>
<th>“AIR BAG ON” and “AIR BAG OFF” indicator lights</th>
<th>Not illuminated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SRS warning light</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passenger’s seat belt reminder light</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Passenger airbag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat belt airbag on the passenger seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passenger’s seat belt pretensioner</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# There is a malfunction in the system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator/warning light</th>
<th>“AIR BAG ON” and “AIR BAG OFF” indicator lights</th>
<th>“AIR BAG OFF”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SRS warning light</td>
<td>On</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passenger’s seat belt reminder light</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devices</td>
<td>Passenger airbag</td>
<td>Deactivated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Seat belt airbag on the passenger seat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Passenger’s seat belt pretensioner</td>
<td>Activated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as a child depending on his/her physique and posture.

*2: In the event the passenger does not wear a seat belt.

*3: When a larger child who has outgrown a child restraint system sits in the passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as an adult depending on his/her physique or posture.

*4: Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the passenger seat. If a child restraint system needs to be installed, install a forward facing child restraint system on the passenger seat. (→P. 76)

*5: In case the indicator is not illuminated, consult this manual on how to install the child restraint system properly. (→P. 80)
CAUTION

- Passenger occupant classification system precautions
  Observe the following precautions regarding the passenger occupant classification system.
  Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.
  ● Wear the seat belt properly.
  ● Make sure the passenger’s seat belt tab has not been left inserted into the buckle before someone sits in the passenger seat.
  ● Do not apply a heavy load to the passenger seat or equipment.
  ● Do not put objects under the passenger seat.
  ● Keep the passenger seatback as upright as possible when the vehicle is moving. Reclining the seatback excessively may lessen the effectiveness of the seat belt system.
  ● If an adult sits in the passenger seat, the “AIR BAG ON” indicator light should illuminated. If the “AIR BAG OFF” indicator is illuminated, ask the passenger to sit up straight, well back in the seat, feet on the floor, and with the seat belt worn correctly. If the “AIR BAG OFF” indicator still remains illuminated, ask the passenger to move the passenger seat fully rearward.
  ● If a child restraint system needs to be installed, install a forward facing child restraint system on the passenger seat in the proper manner. (→P. 80)
  ● Do not modify or remove the seats.
  ● Do not kick the passenger seat or subject it to severe impact. Otherwise, the SRS warning light may come on to indicate a malfunction of the detection system. In this case, contact your Lexus dealer immediately.
  ● Do not use a seat accessory, such as a cushion or seat cover, that covers the seat cushion surface.
  ● Do not modify or replace the upholstery of the seat.
1-7. Safety information

Child restraint systems

A child restraint system for a small child or baby must itself be properly restrained on the seat with the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt.

The laws of all 50 states of the U.S.A. and Canada now require the use of child restraint systems.

Only put a child restraint system when unavoidable.

**Points to remember**

● Choose a child restraint system that suits your vehicle and is appropriate to the age and size of the child.

● For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.

  General installation instructions are provided in this manual. (→P. 80)

**Types of child restraints**

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 2 types according to the age and size of the child.

**Forward facing — Convertible seat**
Before driving

Booster seat

■ Selecting an appropriate child restraint system

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle’s seat belt.
- If a child is too large for a child restraint system, use the vehicle’s seat belt. (→P. 36)
CAUTION

Child restraint precautions

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior, causing death or serious injury.

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the passenger seat even if the “AIR BAG OFF” indicator light is illuminated. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the passenger seat.

- A forward-facing child restraint system may be installed on the passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Adjust the seatback as upright as possible and always move the seat as far back as possible even if the “AIR BAG OFF” indicator light is illuminated, because the passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.

- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or an accident.

- When installing a child restraint system, do not add clips to the shoulder belt, as doing so may prevent the seat belt airbags from operating properly.

- After using the child restraint system, check the vehicle’s seat belt for any damage. If the seat belt is damaged, have it replaced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
CAUTION

■ Child restraint lock function belt precaution

Do not allow children to play with the child restraint lock function belt. If the belt becomes twisted around a child’s neck, it will not be possible to pull the belt out leading to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt behind the seat belt guide.

■ When the child restraint system is not in use

- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the restraint unsecured in the passenger compartment.

- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle. This will prevent it from injuring occupants in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or an accident.
1-7. Safety information

Installing child restraints

Follow the child restraint system manufacturer’s instructions. Firmly secure child restraints to the seats using the seat belt. Attach the top tether strap when installing a child restraint.

The lap/shoulder belt can be used.

Seat belts equipped with a child restraint locking mechanism (ALR/ELR belts passenger’s seat belt) (→P. 36)

Anchor bracket (for top tether strap)

An anchor bracket is provided for the passenger seat.
Installing child restraints using a seat belt (child restraint lock function belt)

■ Forward facing — Convertible seat

**STEP 1**

Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

**STEP 2**

Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

**STEP 3**

Fully extend the lap belt and allow it to retract to put it in lock mode. In lock mode, the belt cannot be extended.
While pushing the child restraint system into the seat, allow the lap belt to retract until the child restraint system is securely in place.

After the lap belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor.

 Booster seat

Place the booster seat on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

Sit the child in the booster seat. Fit the seat belt to the booster seat according to the manufacturer’s instructions and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Check that the lap belt is correctly positioned over the child’s shoulder, and that the lap belt is as low as possible. (→P. 36)
Removing a child restraint installed with a seat belt

Push the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

Child restraint systems with a top tether strap

Secure the child restraint using a seat belt and top tether strap.

Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top tether strap.

Make sure the top tether strap is securely latched.
Laws and regulations pertaining to anchorages

Child restraint systems conforming to FMVSS213 or CMVSS213 specifications can be used.
This vehicle is designed to conform to the SAE J1819.

CAUTION

When installing a booster seat

To prevent the belt from going into ALR lock mode, do not fully extend the lap belt. ALR mode causes the belt to tighten only. This could cause injury or discomfort to the child. (→P. 38)

When installing a child restraint system

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.
If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or driver may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

Only put a forward facing child restraint system on the seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward facing child restraint system on the passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible even if the “AIR BAG OFF” indicator light is illuminated. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).

When a booster seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child’s shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child’s neck, but not so that it could fall off the child’s shoulder. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
When installing a child restraint system

- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Push and pull the child restraint system from side to side and forward to be sure it is secure.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
1-7. Safety information
2-1. Driving procedures
   Driving the vehicle ..................... 88
   Ignition switch .......................... 98
   ASG (Automated Sequential Gearbox) .......... 102
   Turn signal lever ........................ 112
   Parking brake ............................ 113
   Horn ............................................. 115

2-2. Instrument cluster
   Gauges and meters ....................... 116
   Indicators and warning lights ............. 121
   Using the menu ............................. 124

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers
   Headlight switch ......................... 158
   Windshield wipers and washer .............. 160

2-4. Using other driving systems
   Rear view monitor system ............... 163
   Driving assist systems .................. 166
   Active rear wing ......................... 171
   Launch control ............................ 174

2-5. Driving information
   Cargo and luggage ....................... 176
   Vehicle load limits ...................... 179
   Winter driving tips ...................... 180
   Trailer towing ............................ 182
   Dinghy towing ............................. 183
2-1. Driving procedures

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving:

■ Starting the engine
  → P. 98

■ Driving
  
  **STEP 1** With the brake pedal depressed, select 1st gear. (→ P. 102)
  Check that “D1” or “1” is displayed on the gear indicator.

  **STEP 2** Release the parking brake. (→ P. 113)

  **STEP 3** Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

■ Stopping
  
  **STEP 1** Depress the brake pedal.

  **STEP 2** If necessary, set the parking brake.
  If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, select Neutral. (→ P. 103)

■ Parking the vehicle
  
  **STEP 1** Depress the brake pedal.

  **STEP 2** Set the parking brake. (→ P. 113)

  **STEP 3** Select 1st gear or Reverse. (→ P. 102)
  Check that “D1”, “1” or “R” is displayed on the gear indicator.

  **STEP 4** Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK” position to stop the engine.
  Check that “D1” or “R” is no longer displayed on the gear indicator.

  **STEP 5** Lock the door, making sure that you have the key on your person.
Starting on a steep uphill

The hill-start assist control (→P. 166) operates to help reduce the distance that the vehicle rolls backward when starting on an incline. However, under certain conditions hill-start assist control may not work. In that case, follow the procedure below.

**STEP 1** Make sure that the parking brake is set and select 1st gear.
**STEP 2** Gently depress the accelerator pedal.
**STEP 3** Release the parking brake.

Shifting gears
→P. 102

Breaking in your new LFA
To extend the life of the vehicle, observing the following precautions is recommended:

- For the first 186 miles (300 km):
  Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 621 miles (1000 km):
  • Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
  • Avoid sudden acceleration.
  • Do not drive continuously in low gears.
  • Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.
2-1. Driving procedures

■ Engine speed restrictions

The following restrictions exist for engine protection:

● The engine speed is limited to 7400 rpm if the total mileage shown on the odometer is less than 310 miles (500 km).

● The engine speed is limited when the engine is not sufficiently warmed-up, such as immediately after the engine is started or during the engine warm-up period. The variable red zone shows the maximum engine speed currently available. (→P. 119)

● The engine speed is limited to 4400 rpm for approximately 8 minutes when the engine is started with the coolant temperature at 5°F (-15 °C) or lower.

● The engine speed may be limited when either the coolant temperature gauge or oil temperature gauge is flashing.

■ Idling with five cylinders

To improve fuel consumption, the engine may idle at a reduced speed using five cylinders on one side of the engine while stopped or immediately before stopping when 1st gear is selected in AUTO driving mode. During this time, “5 cylinders idling” will be displayed on the meter and vibration or a change in engine sound may occur. This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction.

■ ASG (Automated Sequential Gearbox) operating sounds

(→P. 110

■ Braking sound

● As the LFA uses CCM (Carbon Ceramic Material) brake discs with high-friction pads, it may be possible to hear the sound of the brakes operating (such as a rubbing or squealing sound). This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction.

● The sound of a motor operating may be heard after the engine is stopped. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Driving in the rain

● Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.

● Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.

● Refrain from driving at high speeds on wet surfaces such as on an expressway in the rain, as the LFA is fitted with wide-tread tires that may increase the risk of hydroplaning.
When parking the vehicle

→ P. 110

Operating your vehicle in a foreign country

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→ P. 360)

**CAUTION**

**When driving the vehicle**

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
  - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.
  - When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
  - Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly. This allows you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials. The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. These hot parts may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.
- If the smell of exhaust is noticed inside the vehicle, open the windows and check that the rear hatch is closed. Large amounts of exhaust in the vehicle can cause driver drowsiness and an accident, resulting in death or a serious health hazard. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
- Do not select Neutral while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause insufficient engine braking, resulting in an accident.
- Do not turn the engine off while driving. The power steering system will not operate properly if the engine is not running.
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill. Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness.
2-1. Driving procedures

**CAUTION**

- Do not adjust the positions of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving. Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control that can cause accidents, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Always check that all occupants’ arms, heads and other body parts are not outside the vehicle, as this may result in death or serious injury.

**When driving on slippery road surfaces**

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden changes in engine speed, such as engine braking caused by up-shifting and down-shifting, may cause the vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

**When operating the paddle shift switches/reverse selector switch**

Do not operate the paddle shift switches or reverse selector switch with the accelerator pedal depressed and Neutral selected. Doing so may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

**If a brake pad wear warning message is displayed**

Have your Lexus dealer check and replace the brake pads as soon as possible. The disc damage can result if the pads are not replaced when needed. Moderate levels of the brake pad and disc wear allow enhanced braking power. As a result, the discs may wear more quickly than conventional brake discs. Therefore, when replacing the brake pads, Lexus recommends that you also have the thickness of the discs measured. It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.
2-1. Driving procedures

CAUTION

When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not race the engine.
  - If the vehicle is in any gear other than Neutral the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.
  - Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if flammable material is nearby.
  - Racing the engine may emit loud noise, and possibly cause a nuisance, especially after just starting the engine. This is because the structure of the exhaust pipes cause the sound emitted from the exhaust to be louder than usual for approximately 1 minute after the engine is started.

- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.

- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.

When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
  Doing so may result in the following:
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.
  - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle’s electrical components.

- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the vehicle. If a cigarette lighter is in a place such as the glove box or on the floor, it may be lit accidentally when luggage is loaded or the seat is adjusted, causing a fire.

- Do not attach adhesive discs to the windshield or windows. Do not place containers such as air fresheners on the instrument panel or dashboard. Adhesive discs or containers may act as lenses, causing a fire in the vehicle.
2-1. Driving procedures

**CAUTION**

- Do not leave a door or window open if the curved glass is coated with a metalized film such as a silver-colored one. Reflected sunlight may cause the glass to act as a lens, causing a fire.

- Always apply the parking brake, select 1st gear or Reverse, stop the engine and lock the vehicle. Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.

- Do not stop the engine without first checking the gear indicator to confirm that either 1st gear or Reverse is selected.

  - Do not touch the hood grilles, bezels in the radiator grilles, or exhaust pipes and surrounding area while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off. Doing so may cause burns.

- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.
2-1. Driving procedures

When driving

CAUTION

■ Exhaust gases

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Inhaling exhaust gases may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

● If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area, stop the engine. In a closed area, such as a garage, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

● The exhaust system should be checked occasionally. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Lexus dealer. Failure to do so may allow exhaust gases to enter the vehicle, resulting in death or a serious health hazard.

■ When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off. If you take a nap with the engine on, you may accidentally depress the accelerator and an accident or fire may occur due to engine overheating. In addition, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

■ When braking the vehicle

● Be especially careful if the brakes are wet, such as when driving on wet or snowy roads or immediately after washing the vehicle. When the brakes are wet, their efficiency may be reduced and the vehicle may brake unevenly to the left or right. The efficiency of the parking brake may also be reduced.

● The brake system consists of 3 individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the others will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase. If this happens, do not continue to drive the vehicle. If the brake system warning light (red indicator) comes on together with the buzzer sound while driving, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.
2-1. Driving procedures

⚠️ NOTICE

■ When driving the vehicle

● Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving.
  If the brake pedal is depressed while driving with the accelerator pedal depressed, driving torque may be restrained.

● Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill. Doing so may damage the clutch.

■ When parking the vehicle

● Parking with the rear of the vehicle close to a wall or similar structure may cause the area around the exhaust pipes to overheat. As this may result in damage to the rear bumper or other components, be sure to park the vehicle rear end as far away as possible from walls and other such structures.

● When it rains, do not park on a slope with an angle of 15 degrees or more, as rainwater may enter the vehicle. If parking at such an angle is unavoidable, use wheel chocks and place a car cover over the vehicle.

■ Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

● Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time.
  Doing so may damage the power steering motor.

● When driving over bumps in the road, be careful and drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, tires, underside of the vehicle, etc.

■ If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

● It may be difficult to control your vehicle.

● The vehicle will make abnormal sounds or vibrations.

● The vehicle will lean.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire (→P. 332)
When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Lexus dealer check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transmission, differential, etc.
- Lubrication problems of bearings, joints, etc.
Starting the engine

**STEP 1** Sit in the driver’s seat and firmly depress the brake pedal.

**STEP 2** Turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position.

The current gear will be displayed on the meter as a blinking symbol.

**STEP 3** Pull both paddle shift switches at the same time.

“N” will be displayed in the gear indicator.

The indicator light on the steering wheel illuminates in red.

**STEP 4** Press the “ENGINE START” switch.

After one press, the engine will crank until it starts or for up to 20 seconds, whichever is less.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the engine is completely started.
When driving procedures

■ Changing the ignition switch positions

1. “LOCK”
   The steering wheel is locked and the key can be removed.

2. “ACC”
   Some electrical components such as the power outlet can be used.

3. “ON”
   All electrical components can be used.

■ Turning the key from “ACC” to “LOCK”

Push in the key and turn it to the “LOCK” position.

■ Default driving mode

AUTO driving mode will be automatically selected each time the engine is started. (→P.104)
2-1. Driving procedures

■ If the engine does not start

● Repeat the procedure again. If the engine does not start after a few tries, the “ENGINE START” switch may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

● Check to make sure that the brake pedal is firmly depressed and that “N” is displayed in the gear indicator. (If the brake pedal is not depressed or “N” is not displayed, the engine will not start.)

● The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 53)

● In order to protect the engine, the engine may not start when the engine coolant temperature or the engine oil temperature is below -13°F (-25°C). In that case, a buzzer will sound and “Temp low Engine cannot be started” will be shown on the meter. (→P. 327)

■ When the steering lock cannot be released

When starting the engine, the ignition switch may seem stuck in the “LOCK” position. To free it, turn the key while turning the steering wheel slightly left and right.

■ Key reminder function

A buzzer sounds if the driver’s door is opened while the ignition switch is in the “LOCK” or “ACC” position to remind you to remove the key.

■ After reconnecting the battery

If the gear indicator is not displayed when an attempt is made to start the engine, the engine is not yet ready to start. Depress the brake pedal for several seconds and wait for the gear indicator to appear.
### CAUTION

- **When starting the engine**
  
  Always start the engine while sitting in the driver’s seat. Do not press the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances. Doing so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- **Caution when driving**
  
  Do not turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK” position while driving. An accident may result if the engine is stopped while driving. If you must turn the engine off while the vehicle is moving (due to an emergency), turn the ignition switch only to the “ACC” position. (→P. 355)

### NOTICE

- **To prevent battery discharge**
  
  Do not leave the ignition switch in the “ACC” or “ON” position for long periods of time without the engine running.

- **When starting the engine**
  
  - Do not race a cold engine.
  - If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have the engine checked immediately.
The LFA is equipped with a sequential manual transmission with automated clutch and shifting mechanisms (ASG). Driving modes can be selected according to personal preference and include AUTO driving mode, which allows automatic gear shifting, and SPORT, NORMAL, and WET driving modes which enable manual gear shifting using the paddle shift switches. The shift speed can be adjusted to seven different levels when in any mode other than AUTO driving mode.

Switch operation

1 “+” Paddle shift switch (Upshift/Switch to a forward gear)
   Shifts up by one gear each time this switch is pulled.  
   Selects a forward gear if pulled when Neutral is selected.

2 “-” Paddle shift switch (Downshift)
   Shifts down by one gear each time this switch is pulled.

3 Reverse selector switch

4 Driving mode selector switch (→P. 104)

5 Shift speed selector (→P. 107)
■ Shifting to Neutral

Pull both paddle shift switches at the same time.

“N” is shown on the gear indicator.

■ Shifting to Reverse

Reverse cannot be selected when in a forward gear, and a forward gear cannot be selected when in Reverse. Make sure to select Neutral before shifting.

**STEP 1** Stop the vehicle.

**STEP 2** Pull both paddle shift switches at the same time to select Neutral.

Pull the reverse selector switch.

The gear display changes to “R” and the indicator illuminates in amber.

To shift out of Reverse, pull both paddle shift switches to select Neutral.
Driving modes

The LFA has four driving modes, each of which varies the control characteristics of items such as the electronic throttle, VSC and TRAC according to driving conditions. Driving modes can be selected using the driving mode selector switch or paddle shift switches.

Driving mode characteristics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Driving mode</th>
<th>Gear shifting</th>
<th>Meter display/ Gear indicator</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUTO</td>
<td>Automatic</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Auto Gear Display" /></td>
<td>The optimal gear is selected automatically according to the throttle opening and vehicle speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPORT</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Sport Gear Display" /></td>
<td>Dynamic performance can be maximized on dry roads.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NORMAL</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Normal Gear Display" /></td>
<td>Manual shift driving is possible by using the paddle shift switches.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2-1. Driving procedures

■ Selecting driving modes

Driving modes can be selected using the following procedures:

Switching to AUTO driving mode

Press the AUTO driving mode button.

Release the accelerator pedal before pressing the button.

Switching to SPORT driving mode

Turn the driving mode selector switch upward.

To change from WET driving mode, turn the driving mode selector switch twice.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Driving mode</th>
<th>Gear shifting</th>
<th>Meter display/ Gear indicator</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WET</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dynamic performance can be maximized in slippery road conditions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Switching to NORMAL driving mode

1. When AUTO driving mode is selected:
   Pull the “+” paddle shift switch.
   
   When the vehicle is stopped in Neutral, pull the “+” paddle shift switch twice.

2. When SPORT driving mode is selected:
   Turn the driving mode selector switch downward.

3. When WET driving mode is selected:
   Turn the driving mode selector switch upward.

Switching to WET driving mode

Turn the driving mode selector switch downward.

To change from SPORT driving mode, turn the driving mode selector switch twice.
Shift speed selection

One of seven different shift speeds can be selected for SPORT, NORMAL, and WET driving modes using the shift speed selector. The selected shift speed level is indicated on the meter.

1. Fast (shorter shifting time)
2. Slow (longer shifting time)

The shift speed is shown below the speedometer. The more indicator lights that are illuminated, the faster the shift speed (less time required for gear changes).
Starting off control
The ASG does not have the creep function of a conventional automatic transmission. The vehicle can be driven by selecting 1st gear or Reverse and depressing the accelerator pedal.

Maximum speed for each gear
To avoid over-revving the engine, do not exceed the maximum speed for each gear as shown below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gear</th>
<th>Maximum speed*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>51 (83)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>76 (123)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>103 (167)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>135 (218)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>172 (277)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*: Always observe the legal speed limit when driving on public roads.

Gear shift control
To ensure safety and driving performance, the following restrictions exist:

- Gear shifting with the paddle shift switches may not be possible under certain driving conditions.
- Even while driving with a gear manually selected in SPORT, NORMAL, or WET driving mode, the gears may change automatically under certain driving conditions.
- If the paddle shift switches are operated repeatedly in a short space of time, a temporary restriction of gear shifting may be activated. In this case, “Transmission pump overheat Shift rejected” will be displayed on the meter. (→P. 327)
- Gear shifting with the paddle shift switches may not be possible when the transmission fluid temperature is low. In this case, “Transmission temp low Shift restricted” will be displayed on the meter. (→P. 327)
When driving

■ When the gear indicator flashes
  This indicates that gear shifting did not complete properly after the paddle shift switches were operated.
  Operate the paddle shift switches again. If the indicator does not return to normal after a while, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Buzzer that sounds when the paddle shift switches are operated
  In certain situations where gear shifting with the paddle shift switches is rejected, a buzzer may sound twice.

■ Reverse warning buzzer
  A warning buzzer sounds to notify the driver when Reverse is selected.

■ Reverse selector switch operation
  Always make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped before selecting Reverse. If the vehicle is in motion, Reverse may not be selected even if the reverse selector switch is operated.

■ Notes on switching driving modes
  ● When pressing the AUTO driving mode button, always release the accelerator pedal. It may not be possible to select AUTO driving mode if the accelerator pedal is depressed.
  ● When the driving mode is changed to AUTO driving mode, a gear shift may be automatically performed according to driving conditions.

■ Automatic cancelation of driving modes
  When the engine is stopped, the currently selected driving mode will be canceled and AUTO driving mode will be selected automatically.
2-1. Driving procedures

■ Shift speed

● When the driving mode is changed, the shift speed levels will be set as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Driving mode</th>
<th>Default level</th>
<th>Adjustable range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUTO</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPORT</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NORMAL</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1 – 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WET</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

● Shift shock increases as the shift speed becomes faster.

■ When parking the vehicle

There is no P (Park) setting for the ASG. When parking the vehicle, set the parking brake, select 1st gear or Reverse, and check that the gear indicator shows “D1”, “1” or “R” before stopping the engine.

● Approximately one second after the engine is stopped, the vehicle will enter a parked gear state.
  If the vehicle fails to enter a parked gear state, a buzzer sounds and the gear indicator flashes. Select Neutral and then follow the same procedure again.

● Make sure to stop the engine. Opening the driver’s door without first stopping the engine will cause a warning to sound and Neutral to be automatically selected after 5 seconds. Even if the driver’s door is not opened, a warning will sound and Neutral will be automatically selected after 90 seconds.

■ ASG operating sounds

● Even when the engine is stopped, operating sounds of the electric oil pump may be heard. This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction.

● As the drive train of the LFA is designed to be especially responsive to accelerator pedal operation, a sound may be heard from the transaxle when driving at low engine speeds. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Customization that can be configured at your Lexus dealer

The sound pattern of the reverse warning buzzer can be changed.
(Customizable features → P. 383)
CAUTION

■ Driving on slippery roads
Do not suddenly accelerate or change gears. Sudden changes in engine braking force may cause the vehicle to skid sideways or spin, resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge
While the engine is stopped, do not operate the paddle shift switches, reverse selector switch, driving mode selector switch or shift speed selector repeatedly.
2-1. Driving procedures

Turn signal lever

The turn signal lever can be used to show the following intentions of the driver:

1. Right turn
2. Left turn
3. Move and hold the lever part-way to signal a lane change
   - The right hand signal will flash until you release the lever.
4. Move and hold the lever part-way to signal a lane change
   - The left hand signal will flash until you release the lever.

■ Turn signals can be operated when
   The ignition switch is in the “ON” position.

■ If the indicator flashes faster than usual
   A light bulb in the front or rear turn signal light may have burned out. Have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.
2-1. Driving procedures
Parking brake

For the parking brake, an electrical parking brake system is adopted.

1. Press the switch to set the parking brake.

If the parking brake switch is operated when the ignition switch is not in the “ON” position, the parking brake indicator light will come on and stay on for a while.

Press and hold the parking brake switch if an emergency occurs and it is necessary to operate the parking brake while driving. The parking brake is applied only while the switch is being pressed.

2. Pull the switch to release the parking brake.

Operate the parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. Make sure that the parking brake indicator light goes off.

- Parking brake operation
  - When the ignition switch is not in the “ON” position, the parking brake cannot be released using the parking brake switch.
  - If the parking brake is operated repeatedly over a short period of time, the system may restrict operation to prevent overheating. In this case, “Parking brake overheat” is shown on the meter. (→P. 327)

- Parking brake operation sound
  The motor sounds when the parking brake operates. This does not indicate a malfunction.

- Parking brake indicator light
  When the ignition switch is turned to the “ACC” or “LOCK” position with the parking brake set, the parking brake indicator light will stay on for a while. This does not indicate a malfunction.
2-1. Driving procedures

■ When there is a malfunction in the system

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on or flash. (→P. 325, 327)
Depending on the condition, the parking brake indicator light may flash.

⚠️ NOTICE

■ When parking the vehicle

Before you leave the vehicle, set the parking brake, select 1st gear or Reverse, and stop the engine. Make sure that the vehicle does not move.

■ When the system malfunctions

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and check the warning messages.

■ When the parking brake cannot be released due to a malfunction

Use the parking brake release tool to manually release the parking brake. (→P. 345)
Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.
2-1. Driving procedures

Horn

To sound the horn, press the pad in the middle of the steering wheel.

- After adjusting the steering wheel
  Make sure that the steering wheel is securely locked.
  The horn may not sound if the steering wheel is not securely locked. (→P. 41)
The meters have a normal display and a menu display (→P. 124). The displays are switched using the control pad on the steering wheel. When the menu is displayed, the main meter moves to the right.

**Normal display**

![Normal display image]

**Menu display**

![Menu display image]

The units used on the gauges and meters may differ depending on the destination.
2-2. Instrument cluster

1 Speedometer
2 Tachometer
3 Gear indicator (→ P. 104)
4 Driving mode indicator (→ P. 104)
5 Trip information display
   Displays trip meter, fuel economy and other driving information (→ P. 118)
6 Odometer
7 Engine oil temperature gauge
   Displays the engine oil temperature. If the engine oil temperature becomes 284°F (140°C) or higher, a buzzer will sound and this display will flash. (→ P. 313)
8 Clock (→ P. 148)
9 Engine oil pressure gauge
   Displays the pressure of the engine oil in the engine. If the oil pressure drops, a buzzer will sound and a warning message will be displayed. (→ P. 324)
10 Fuel gauge
   Displays remaining fuel quantity and reminds the driver to refuel. (→ P. 315)
11 Outside temperature display
12 Engine coolant temperature gauge
   Displays engine coolant temperature. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds 244°F (118°C), a buzzer will sound and this display will flash. (→ P. 313)
13 Menu
   Allows driver to set various functions and check vehicle status. (→ P. 124)
   Displays warning messages in case of a malfunction. (→ P. 322)
2-2. Instrument cluster

Trip information

The information on the trip information display can be changed when in the normal display by pressing up or down on the control pad.

■ Trip meter

Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters “A” and “B” can be used to record and display different distances independently.

The function can be reset by pressing up or down on the control pad for longer than one second when the trip meter “A” or “B” is displayed.

■ Current fuel consumption

Displays the current rate of fuel consumption.

■ Average fuel consumption

Displays the average fuel consumption since the function was reset.

The function can be reset by pressing up or down on the control pad for longer than one second when the average fuel consumption is displayed.
2-2. Instrument cluster

■ Average vehicle speed

Displays the average vehicle speed since the engine was started or the function was reset.

The function can be reset by pressing up or down on the control pad for longer than one second when the average vehicle speed is displayed.

■ Driving range

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.

■ Variable red zone

To help protect the engine, the red zone of the tachometer starts at different engine speeds ranging from 4400 rpm to 9000 rpm depending on the engine coolant temperature.

■ Engine coolant and engine oil temperature displays

In congested traffic, the engine coolant and engine oil displays may show a higher than usual temperature. This is not a malfunction. If temperatures are abnormal, these displays will flash.
Outside temperature display

- The temperature display shows temperatures within the range of -40°F (-40°C) and 122°F (50°C).
- In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change:
  - When the vehicle is stopped, or moving at low speeds (less than 15 mph [25 km/h])
  - When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)
- When “--” or “E” is displayed, the system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the engine and its components

- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone.
- The following may indicate that the engine is overheating. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place.
  - The display on the engine coolant temperature gauge flashes. (→P. 351)
  - The display on the engine oil temperature gauge flashes. (→P. 313)
- In the following situations, the engine may be malfunctioning. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.
  - The oil pressure gauge display does not show an increase even if the accelerator pedal is depressed.
  - The “Engine oil pressure low” warning message is displayed.
2-2. Instrument cluster

Indicators and warning lights

The indicators and warning lights on the instrument cluster and center panel inform the driver of the status of the vehicle’s various systems.

Instrument cluster

The units used on the gauges and meters may differ depending on the destination.

Center panel
■ Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle’s various systems.

- Turn signal indicator (→P. 112)
- Headlight indicator (→P. 158)
- Tail light indicator (→P. 158)
- Headlight high beam indicator (→P. 158)
- Slip indicator (→P. 167)
- VSC off indicator (→P. 167)
- “TRAC OFF” indicator (→P. 167)
- Parking brake indicator (→P. 113)
- SRS airbag on/off indicator (→P. 72)
- Parking brake indicator (→P. 113)

*1: These lights turn on when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*2: The light flashes to indicate that the system is operating.
### Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in any of the vehicle’s systems. (→P. 312)

*1: These lights turn on when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*2: The display flashes to indicate that the engine oil temperature is too high.

*3: These displays flash to indicate that the engine coolant temperature is too high.

---

**CAUTION**

**If a safety system warning light does not come on**

Should a safety system light such as the ABS or SRS warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.
2-2. Instrument cluster

Using the menu

The meter display settings and vehicle status can be checked using the control pad located on the steering wheel and the menu display.

■ Menu structure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu item</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Speed Ind (→P.126)</td>
<td>Changes color when the vehicle reaches a set speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Rev Ind (→P.129)</td>
<td>A ring-shaped indicator appears in the tachometer when the engine reaches a set speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Status (→P.132)</td>
<td>Indicates the current fuel consumption, average fuel consumption, average vehicle speed, and driving range.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trip Info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oil Level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shows the amount of engine oil in the oil tank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oil Maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Indicates engine oil replacement timing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tire Pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shows inflation pressure of each tire.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Lap Timer (→P.142)</td>
<td>Measures and shows lap times.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 2-2. Instrument cluster

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu item</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Brightness</strong></td>
<td>Allows driver to adjust the brightness of the meter and interior illumination.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Settings</strong></td>
<td><strong>Needle</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Allows driver to change the needle color for the tachometer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Rev Peak</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Displays an afterimage of the tachometer needle at the maximum engine speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Clock</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Allows driver to adjust the displayed time and choose between 12-hour (12H) and 24-hour (24H) mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Shortcut</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Allows driver to jump to a preset display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Units</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Changes units used to indicate distance, speed and fuel consumption.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Temp</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Changes the display temperature between Fahrenheit and Celsius.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Language</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Changes the language displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Warning</strong></td>
<td>Automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in one of the vehicle's systems. (&quot;Menu&quot; is displayed when there is no warning occurring.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Control pad**

Press up, down, left and right on the control pad to select and change menu settings.

Pressing left changes the display as follows:
- **Press**: Returns to the previous screen.
- **Press and hold**: Returns to the normal display. (→P.116)
“Speed Ind” (vehicle speed indicator)

When the vehicle reaches a set speed, a buzzer will sound and the displayed speed unit will turn amber. (Some settings cannot be changed while the vehicle is in motion.)

■ Indicator

■ Set up procedure

Select “Speed Ind” and press right on the control pad.
Select the desired memory and press right on the control pad.

To turn off the “Speed Ind” function, select “OFF” and press left on the control pad. (The screen will return to the menu display.)

Select the desired speed by pressing up and down on the control pad.

Selectable speed range:
In mph reading — 20 mph to 160 mph*
In km/h reading — 30 km/h to 250 km/h*

Press: Changes in 1 mph or 1 km/h intervals
Press and hold: Changes in 10 mph or 10 km/h intervals

*: Always observe the legal speed limit when driving on public roads.
Press left on the control pad to enter the desired speed.

Press left on the control pad again to confirm the desired memory and speed. (The screen will return to the menu display.)
“Rev Ind” (rev indicator)

When the engine reaches a set speed and the driving mode is set to SPORT, NORMAL or WET mode, a buzzer will sound and the tachometer will show a ring-shaped indicator in green or amber. (Some settings cannot be changed while the vehicle is in motion.) If the engine speed enters the red zone, the over-rev warning will be shown in red regardless of the set speed. (→P.156)

Indicator

Set up procedure

Select “Rev Ind” and press right on the control pad.
Select “ON” and press right on the control pad.

To turn off the “Rev Ind” function, select “OFF” or set it to “----” (as shown) and then press left on the control pad. (The screen will return to the menu display.)

Select engine speeds for the green and amber sections.

Right: Switches between the green and amber sections
Up and down: Engine speed selection

Selectable engine speed range: 4000 rpm to 9000 rpm
The speed can be changed in 100 rpm intervals.
Either green or amber, or both green and amber can be selected.
Press left on the control pad to enter the desired engine speed.

The settings are shown as follows:

- Set in both green and amber
- Set in green
- Set in amber

Press left on the control pad again to confirm the “Rev Ind” function. (The screen will return to the menu display.)
**“Status” (vehicle status)**

“Trip Info”, “Oil Level”, “Oil Maintenance” and “Tire Pressure” information can be checked.

**STEP 1**
Select “Status” and press right on the control pad.

**STEP 2**
Select the desired menu item and press right on the control pad.

“Trip Info” (→P.133)

“Oil Level” (→P.135)

“Oil Maintenance” (→P.138)

“Tire Pressure” (→P.140)
“Trip Info” (trip information)
Displays current fuel consumption, average fuel consumption, average vehicle speed and driving range.

Select “Trip Info” and press right on the control pad.
1 **Current fuel consumption**
   Displays the current rate of fuel consumption.

2 **Average fuel consumption**
   Displays the average fuel consumption since the function was reset.
   This function can be reset from the normal display. (→P.118)

3 **Average vehicle speed**
   Displays the average vehicle speed since the function was reset.
   This function can be reset from the normal display. (→P.119)

4 **Driving range**
   Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the remaining fuel.
   This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
   When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.
“Oil Level” (engine oil level)
The amount of oil remaining in the tank can be calculated and is shown on a scale of one to ten. If the engine oil level cannot be measured, the reason will be shown on the screen.

Conditions for measurement
● The engine oil temperature is between 203°F and 230°F (95°C and 110°C).
● The engine is idling.
● The vehicle is stopped on level ground.

Select “Oil Level” and press right on the control pad.

The amount of engine oil remaining is measured automatically.

The amount of time needed to complete the measurement is counted down on the screen.
Measurement result

Once measurement is complete, the result will be displayed.

The oil amount between the maximum and minimum markings is approximately 2.1 qt. (2.0 L, 1.8 Imp. qt.).

As the engine oil level in the oil tank varies depending on the driving condition of the vehicle immediately before measurement, the results may vary even if the overall oil amount is constant.

Perform the following actions as necessary according to the measurement results:

● If the oil level is low, add engine oil as needed. (→P. 257)

   Even if the measurement result shows that the engine oil is below the maximum level, be careful not to add more oil than necessary. If unsure of how much oil to add, contact your Lexus dealer.

● If “Engine oil level low Check oil level” is displayed on the meter, avoid high load driving and add oil immediately.

   Do not let the oil level reach or fall below the minimum marking, as doing so may cause engine damage.
If measurement cannot be performed, the item with “No” displayed may be the cause. Check the following items and then attempt to perform the measurement again:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Correction procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engine Warm</td>
<td>The engine oil has not warmed sufficiently.</td>
<td>Measure when the engine oil temperature is between 203°F and 230°F (95°C and 110°C).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idling</td>
<td>The engine speed is too low or too high.</td>
<td>Measure when the engine speed is between 900 rpm and 1100 rpm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stationary</td>
<td>The vehicle is not completely stationary.</td>
<td>Measure when the vehicle is completely stopped with Neutral selected and the parking brake set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle Level</td>
<td>The vehicle is parked on an incline.</td>
<td>Measure when the vehicle is on level ground with an incline of 4 degrees or less.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the measuring function does not work even after all the above conditions have been met, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
“Oil Maintenance” (engine oil maintenance)
This system calculates engine oil replacement timing and reminds the driver when it is time to replace the oil. Resetting operation should be performed at your Lexus dealer when you have them change the engine oil. (This procedure cannot be performed while the vehicle is in motion.)

Select “Oil Maintenance” and press right on the control pad.

Press and hold right on the control pad for 5 seconds.
“Complete” will be displayed when the reset procedure has been completed.

The system will start measuring the distance to the next engine oil replacement timing.
“Tire Pressure” (tire inflation pressure)

Select “Tire Pressure” and press right on the control pad.

The tire inflation pressure for each tire is displayed.

If bars instead of a numeric value are displayed, the tire pressure warning system is not receiving tire inflation pressure data from a transmitter. Follow the same procedure again after waiting a few minutes.

If the bars are still displayed, there may be a malfunction with the tire pressure warning system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
If one or more tires are insufficiently inflated

If a tire is insufficiently inflated, an amber frame will be shown.

The display does not specify the location of the insufficiently inflated tire. Adjust all the tires to the specified inflation pressure. (→P. 278, 366)

If a tire is noticeably deflated, it may be punctured. Temporarily repair the tire using the emergency tire puncture repair kit. (→P. 332)
"Lap Timer"

Measures lap time and displays previous lap times.

■ Lap time display

The following times can be displayed.

1 Stopwatch
   The current measurement time is shown.

2 Lap time list
   During “Lap Times” display:
   The 4 most recent lap times are shown.
   During “Past Times” display:
   The 20 most recent lap times are shown.

3 Fastest lap
   Displays the fastest lap time recorded since the last reset.

4 Total time
   Displays the total lap time since the last reset.
2-2. Instrument cluster

■ Operation
Press up and down on the control pad.

![Control pad image]

1. Start ("▲Start")/stop ("▲Stop") measurement
2. Press: Mark off one lap ("▼Lap")
   Press and hold: Reset ("▼Reset")
   Resetting erases all measurement results.

■ Measurement method

When driving

Select “Lap Timer” and press right on the control pad.

![Menu screen image]
Select “Lap Timer” and press right on the control pad.

The “Lap Timer” function will be turned “ON” and the trip information/odometer will be changed to stopwatch mode.

Select “Lap Times” and press right on the control pad.

Lap time list, “Fastest Lap”, and “Total” will be displayed. “▲Start” and “▼Reset” will be shown on the stopwatch display.
Press up on the control pad ("▲ Start") to begin measurement.

● To measure lap times:

Press down on the control pad ("▼ Lap") during measurement to mark off a lap. The lap time will be added to the lap time list. (The most recent lap will be displayed at the top of the lap time list.)

The fastest lap time will also be displayed as “Fastest Lap”.

● To stop measurement:

Press up on the control pad ("▲ Stop") during measurement.

When “▲ Stop” is selected, the stopwatch time is not recorded as a lap time.

When “▲ Start” is selected, measurement resumes from the stopwatch time shown.
Displaying measurement results
Measurement results can be displayed when the “Lap Timer” function is “OFF”. Results can also be displayed when the “Lap Timer” function is turned “ON” but not recording measurements.

Select “Past Times” and press right on the control pad.

Lap time list, “Fastest Lap”, and “Total” will be displayed.

Move through the lap time list by pressing up and down on the control pad.

The lap time list displays the 20 most recent lap times.
“Brightness” (brightness control)

The brightness of the meter, instrument panel lights and down light (while tail lights are on) can be adjusted.

Select “Brightness” and press right on the control pad.

Adjust the brightness by pressing up and down on the control pad.
“Settings”

Settings for the meter display can be changed. (Settings cannot be changed while the vehicle is in motion.)

Select “Settings” and press right on the control pad.

Select the desired setting and press right on the control pad.

“Needle” (→P.149)
“Rev Peak” (→P.150)
“Clock” (→P.151)
“Shortcut” (→P.153)
“Units” (→P.154)
“Temp” (→P.154)
“Language” (→P.155)
“Needle”

Each time right on the control pad is pressed, the color of the tachometer needle will change as follows:
“Rev Peak”

When the engine speed reaches or exceeds 6000 rpm, an afterimage of the tachometer needle will be displayed at the highest engine speed for approximately 0.5 seconds.

Set up procedure

Press the right side of the control pad to turn this function “ON” or “OFF”

The afterimage color of the tachometer needle changes as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tachometer needle color</th>
<th>Afterimage color</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Blue</td>
<td>Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White</td>
<td>Blue</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
“Clock”
The displayed time can be adjusted and shown in 12-hour (12H) or 24-hour (24H) mode.

Select “Clock” and press right on the control pad.

Selecting 12H or 24H mode
Press up or down on the control pad to switch between 12H and 24H mode.

When 12H mode is selected, “AM” or “PM” will be displayed.

Pressing right on the control pad moves the cursor to the hour adjustment menu.
Clock adjustment

1. Hour adjustment
2. Minute adjustment

**STEP 1** Press right on the control pad to move the cursor to the hour adjustment menu.

**STEP 2** Press up or down on the control pad to adjust the hour.

**STEP 3** Press right on the control pad to move the cursor to the minute adjustment menu.

**STEP 4** Press up or down on the control pad to adjust the minute.

Pressing right on the control pad moves the cursor to the 12H/24H mode adjustment menu.
“Shortcut”
Enables a quick jump to a preset screen when left on the control pad is pressed in the normal display.

Select “Shortcut” and press right on the control pad.

Select the desired item and press left on the control pad.

The selected item will be set as a shortcut.
■ “Units”

The units of measurement used for the speedometer, odometer, and trip information can be changed.

Each time right on the control pad is pressed, the distance (miles, km), the speed (MPH, km/h) and the fuel consumption (MPG, km/l, L/100km) measurement units will be changed.

■ “Temp” (temperature)

The units of measurement used for the outside temperature, engine coolant temperature, engine oil temperature and air conditioning temperature displays can be changed.

Each time right on the control pad is pressed, the temperature display unit will be changed (Fahrenheit, Celsius).
“Language”
The display language can be changed.

STEP 1
Select “Language” and press right on the control pad.

STEP 2
Select a language.
Pressing left on the control pad sets the selected language. (The display will return to the “Settings” screen.)
2-2. Instrument cluster

- **Meter operation restrictions while vehicle is in motion**
  While the vehicle is in motion, some menu items cannot be changed using the control pad. Restricted items are displayed in gray or without an arrow. These items can be operated once the vehicle is stopped.

- **“Rev Ind” (rev indicator)**
  - Over-rev warning (regular setting)
    If the engine speed enters the red zone, the over-rev warning will be shown in red regardless of the set speed.
  - Even if the green or amber indicator is set to 9000 rpm, the over-rev warning will be displayed.
  - If the green and amber indicators are both set to the same engine speed, the indicator will be shown in amber.

- **Measuring the engine oil level**
  - The dry sump lubrication system circulates the engine oil between the engine and oil tank according to driving conditions. Accordingly, the engine oil level in the oil tank may vary even if the overall amount is constant, affecting the measurement results.
  - It takes some time for the engine oil level to stabilize after the engine is started. To obtain a more stable result, drive the vehicle for a while and then perform the measurement without stopping the engine.
  - If an attempt to measure the oil level is made immediately after the previous oil level measurement process was completed, the previous measurement may be displayed.
  - If the measurement result flashes, the measuring function is malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- **Engine oil maintenance**
  “Oil maintenance required” will be displayed once the vehicle has been driven for more than 6214 miles (10000 km) since the last reset. (→P. 327) The engine oil may need to be replaced earlier depending on driving conditions.
Using the “Lap Timer”

- When the “Lap Timer” function is turned “OFF” or the engine is stopped while a lap is being timed, the lap timer will stop and the lap time up to that point will be recorded.
- If the lap time being recorded ends with the same time as the fastest lap, the newer time will be saved as the fastest lap time.
- If the lap time exceeds “9:59:59.99”, the display will return to “0:00:00.00” but the total time will be recorded.
- If a warning message is displayed when a lap time is being measured, the lap time will still continue to be recorded.
  Operating the control pad while the warning message is shown returns the display to the stopwatch but the warning message will continue to appear until the warning is resolved.
- In the normal display, the current measurement time and the latest lap time will be displayed.

Changing the temperature measurement unit

When the “Temp” measurement unit is changed, the air conditioning system temperature setting, air outlets and fan speed characteristics may be changed. This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction.

If the battery is disconnected or discharges

“Lap Timer” data and “Clock” settings will be reset.
Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Headlight switch

1. Off
   - Canada only: The daytime running lights turn on.

2. The side marker, parking, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.
   - Canada only: The daytime running lights and all lights listed above turn on.

3. The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

Turning on the high beam headlights

1. With the headlights on, push the lever forward to turn on the high beams.
   - Pull the lever rearward to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2. Pull the lever rearward and release it to flash the high beams once.
   - You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.
Daytime running light system (Canada only)
To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the headlights and tail lights turn on automatically whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released.

Automatic light off system
- When the headlights come on: The headlights and tail lights turn off 30 seconds after a door is opened and closed if the ignition switch is turned to the “ACC” or “LOCK” position. (The light turns off immediately if the key is pressed after both side doors are locked.)
- When only the tail lights come on: The tail lights turn off automatically if the ignition switch is turned to the “ACC” or “LOCK” position and the driver’s door is opened.

To turn the lights on again, turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position, or turn the light switch to once and then back to or .

NOTICE
To prevent battery discharge
Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
The wiper operation is selected by moving the lever as follows.

1. Off
2. Intermittent windshield wiper operation
3. Low speed windshield wiper operation
4. High speed windshield wiper operation
5. Temporary operation
6. Increases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency
7. Decreases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency

8. Washer/wiper dual operation
   
   The wipers operate automatically. (After operating several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.)

   With the headlight cleaners:
   If the headlights are on, the headlight cleaners will operate once.
The windshield wipers and washer can be operated when
The ignition switch is in the “ON” position.

Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation
The time until the drip prevention wiper sweep occurs is changed depending on vehicle speed.
When low speed wiper operation is selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only when the vehicle is stationary. (However, when the intermittent wiper interval adjuster is adjusted to the highest level, the mode will not switch.)

Wiper reverse motion
If snow or similar substances build up around the windshield and prevent the wiper from moving smoothly, the wiper may reverse direction before the end of its stroke in order to secure driver visibility and to protect the system. This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction.

If no windshield washer fluid sprays
Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

Lifting the wiper

Activate the wiper and turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK” position when the wiper approaches the upper reverse position.
The wiper will stop moving.

Lift and hold the main and sub blades.
The blades will not remain in the up position if released.
2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

■ If there is a system malfunction
   “Check wiper system” will be shown on the meter. (→P. 325)

⚠️ NOTICE

■ When the windshield is dry
   Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

■ When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle
   Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

■ Lifting the wiper

   Make sure that the wiper is stopped near the upper reverse position. Do not lift up the wiper if it is in the retracted position, because the wiper blade or front pillar fin may be damaged.
2-4. Using other driving systems

Rear view monitor system *

The rear view monitor assists the driver by displaying an image of the area behind the vehicle while reversing. The image displayed on the screen is the same as the image reflected in the rear view mirror.

The rear view image is displayed when Reverse is selected.

If the gear is shifted out of Reverse, the screen returns to the previous one.

### Displayed area

The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary depending on vehicle orientation or road conditions.

*: If equipped
2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Rear view monitor camera

In the following cases, it may be difficult to see images on the screen even when the system is functioning correctly:

- The vehicle is in a dark area, such as at night.
- The temperature near the lens is extremely high or low.
- Water droplets are on the camera lens or humidity is high, such as when it rains.
- Foreign matter, such as snow and mud, adheres to the camera lens.
- When the camera has scratches or dirt on it.
- The sun or headlights are shining directly into the camera lens.

■ Smear effect

If a bright light, such as sunlight reflected off the vehicle body, is picked up by the camera, a smear effect* characteristic to the camera may occur.

*: Smear effect — A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source appears to have a vertical streak above and below it.

■ Flicker effect

When the camera is used under fluorescent light, sodium lights, or mercury lights etc., the lights and the illuminated areas may appear to flicker.
**CAUTION**

■ When using the rear view monitor system

Observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries:

- Never depend solely on the monitor system when reversing.
- Always check visually and with the mirrors to confirm your intended path is clear.
- Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distances.

■ Conditions which may affect the rear view monitor system

- If the back of the vehicle has been hit, the camera’s position and mounting angle may have changed. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
- If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If the camera lens is extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and rinse.
- The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.

**NOTICE**

■ Camera precautions

- As the camera has a water proof construction, do not detach, disassemble or modify it. This may cause incorrect operation.
- Do not allow organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass coat to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off as soon as possible.
- If a power washer is used for washing the vehicle, do not point it at or near the camera as doing so may damage the camera.
- Do not use too much force when cleaning the camera lens.
To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

■ **ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)**
  Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface.

■ **Brake assist**
  Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation.

■ **VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)**
  Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces.

■ **TRAC (Traction Control)**
  Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the drive wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads.

■ **Hill-start assist control**
  Helps to reduce the vehicle’s rolling backward distance when starting on an incline or slippery slope.

■ **EPS (Electric Power Steering)**
  Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel.

■ **VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management)**
  Provides integrated control of the ABS, brake assist, VSC, TRAC, and hill-start assist control systems.
  Helps to maintain vehicle stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling the brakes and engine output.
  When switched to SPORT driving mode, the control characteristics of the VDIM system are altered.

■ **Active rear wing**
  → P. 171
When the ABS/VSC/TRAC/hill-start assist control systems are operating

The slip indicator flashes to indicate that the ABS/VSC/TRAC/hill-start assist control systems are operating.

The stop lights and high mounted stoplight turn on when the hill-start assist control system is operating.

Disabling the VSC/TRAC systems

If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow or mud, VSC/TRAC may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. You may need to turn the system off to enable you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

Press the switch to turn off VSC and TRAC.

The VSC off indicator light and “TRAC OFF” indicator light should come on.

Press the switch again to turn the systems back on.
2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Hill-start assist control operation conditions
  - The vehicle rolls backward.
  - A forward gear is selected.
  - The brake pedal is not depressed.

■ Automatic reactivation of the VSC/TRAC systems
  If the VSC/TRAC systems are turned off, re-starting the engine will automatically reactivate them.

■ Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, VSC, TRAC and hill-start assist control systems
  - A sound may be heard from the engine compartment if the brake pedal is depressed repeatedly when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
  - Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
    - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
    - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.

■ EPS operation sound
  When the steering wheel is operated, a motor sound may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Reduced effectiveness of the EPS system
  The effectiveness of the EPS system is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result. Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the engine off. The EPS system should return to normal within 10 minutes.

■ If the slip indicator comes on
  It may indicate a malfunction in the VSC, TRAC or hill-start assist control system. Contact your Lexus dealer.
2-4. Using other driving systems

When driving

**CAUTION**

- **The ABS does not operate effectively when**
  - Tires with inadequate gripping ability are used.
  - The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on wet or slick roads.

- **Stopping distance when the ABS is operating will exceed that of normal conditions**
  The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle’s stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you in the following situations:
  - When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
  - When driving over bumps in the road
  - When driving over roads with potholes or roads with uneven surfaces

- **TRAC may not operate effectively in some conditions**
  Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRAC system is operating.

  Do not drive the vehicle in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

- **Hill-start assist control does not operate effectively in some conditions**
  Do not overly rely on the hill-start assist control. The hill-start assist control may not operate effectively depending on the grade of incline and on roads covered with ice.

- **If the slip indicator flashes while driving**
  The slip indicator flashes to indicate that ABS, VSC, TRAC or hill-start assist control is operating. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes.

- **When the VSC/TRAC systems are turned off**
  Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are the systems to help ensure vehicle stability and driving force by automatically controlling the brakes and engine output, do not turn the VSC/TRAC systems off unless necessary.
2-4. Using other driving systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CAUTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Replacing tires**

Make sure that all tires are of the specified size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level. (→P. 366)

The ABS, VSC and TRAC systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle.

Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

**Handling of tires and suspension**

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system to malfunction.
2-4. Using other driving systems

Active rear wing

The LFA is equipped with an active rear wing that operates automatically while the vehicle is being driven. This active rear wing enhances aerodynamic performance especially at high speeds, contributing to a more stable ride. The active rear wing can be controlled using a switch while the vehicle is stopped.

■ Manual operation

![Manual operation diagram]

1 Up
2 Down

■ Automatic operation

The active rear wing will activate automatically as follows according to the selected driving mode (→P.104):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Driving mode</th>
<th>Up</th>
<th>Down</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUTO</td>
<td>81 (130)</td>
<td>25 (40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPORT</td>
<td>50 (80)</td>
<td>25 (40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NORMAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WET</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Always observe the legal speed limit when driving on public roads.

■ Manual operating conditions

The active rear wing can be operated manually when the vehicle is stopped and the ignition switch is in the “ON” position.
2-4. Using other driving systems

- **Automatic retraction**
  Even if the active rear wing is raised manually, it will automatically retract when the vehicle speed exceeds 16 mph (25 km/h).
  (It will not rise again until the above mentioned trigger speed is reached.)

- **When there is a malfunction in the system**
  “Failure of active rear wing” will be shown on the meter. (→P. 325)
  Avoid high speed driving and have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

---

**CAUTION**

- **When manually operating the active rear wing**
  Observe the following precautions before operating the active rear wing. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.
  ● Ensure that the surrounding area is free from any foreign objects that may come into contact with or get caught by the active rear wing.
  ● When there are people near the active rear wing, make sure that there is no possibility of their clothing, personal belongings or body parts getting caught. Children especially should be warned not to touch the active rear wing while it is being operated.
  ● If there is a risk that a foreign object may become jammed during operation, stop operation immediately or raise the active rear wing by pressing up on the switch.
NOTICE

■ To prevent system damage
  ● Do not apply pressure to the active rear wing when pushing or pulling the vehicle.
  ● Do not lean on the active rear wing.
  ● Do not attach any accessories or other foreign objects to the active rear wing.
  ● Do not modify or disassemble the active rear wing.
  ● Do not subject the active rear wing to severe impacts.

■ To prevent battery discharge
  Do not operate the active rear wing repeatedly while the engine is turned off.
2-4. Using other driving systems

Launch control

When set, launch control enables the vehicle to accelerate from a standing start at 4000 rpm. Launch control uses overall optimized control that considers vehicle acceleration performance, stability and clutch durability. (Do not use launch control on public roads.)

■ Setting the system

**STEP 1** Ensure that you are seated well back in the driver’s seat with the seat belt fastened.

Make sure that the passenger is also seated well back with their seat belt fastened.

**STEP 2** Start the engine. Firmly depress the brake pedal with your left foot and release the parking brake.

Continue to depress the brake pedal.

**STEP 3** Select SPORT driving mode.

**STEP 4** Select shift speed level 7.

**STEP 5** Pull the “+” paddle shift switch to select 1st gear.

**STEP 6** Pull the “-” paddle shift switch and hold it for 5 seconds.

“LAUNCH” will be displayed on the meter.

**STEP 7** Release the “-” paddle shift switch.

**STEP 8** Depress the accelerator pedal firmly.

Continue to depress the accelerator pedal. The engine speed will be automatically maintained at 4000 rpm. The vehicle is then ready for launch.

**STEP 9** Release the brake pedal.

The vehicle will launch forward.

Once the accelerator pedal is released completely, launch control will be canceled and SPORT driving mode will be engaged.
2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Start-off acceleration

Start-off acceleration depends on how much the accelerator pedal is depressed.

■ Usage restrictions

- Launch control cannot be set if the total mileage shown on the odometer is less than 310 miles (500 km).
- Launch control cannot be set until the engine and transmission are fully warmed up. Before using launch control, warm up the vehicle by driving it.
- Launch control cannot be set if there is a malfunction in the engine, transmission, drive control system or other relevant systems.
- As launch control places a significant load on the vehicle’s mechanisms, it cannot be used two or more times in succession. After using launch control, cruise at a normal speed for approximately 10 minutes to allow vehicle mechanisms to cool down.
- To protect the systems, the number of times that launch control can be used is limited. To check how many times launch control has been used on your vehicle, contact your Lexus dealer.

⚠️ CAUTION

■ Launch control precautions

- Do not use on public roads.
- Use only when road and ambient conditions are safe.
- Before use, ensure that no people or obstructions are nearby.
- Proper use of launch control requires a professional level of driving skill. When driving, always check track conditions and the surrounding area.

⚠️ NOTICE

■ To prevent system damage

- Always follow the correct operation procedures as described in this manual.
- Only use launch control on dry, paved road surfaces, as slippery or loose road surfaces may cause damage to the vehicle's mechanisms.
2-5. Driving information

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load:

● Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible.

● Be sure all items are secured in place.

● To maintain vehicle balance while driving, position luggage evenly within the luggage compartment.

● For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.

Capacity and distribution

Cargo capacity depends on the total weight of the occupants.

\[
\text{(Cargo capacity)} = (\text{Total load capacity}) - (\text{Total weight of occupants})
\]

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit —

(1) Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle’s placard.

(2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

(3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. \((1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lbs.})\)

(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing.

**Example based on your vehicle**

When 1 person with the weight of 176 lb. (80 kg) is riding in your vehicle, which has a total load capacity of 345 lb. (155 kg), the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity will be as follows:

\[
345 \text{ lb.} - 176 \text{ lb.} = 169 \text{ lb.} \quad (155 \text{ kg} - 80 \text{ kg} = 75 \text{ kg})
\]

In this condition, if 1 more occupant with the weight of 154 lb. (70 kg) gets on, the available cargo and luggage load will be reduced as follows:

\[
169 \text{ lb.} - 154 \text{ lb.} = 15 \text{ lb.} \quad (75 \text{ kg} - 70 \text{ kg} = 5 \text{ kg})
\]

As shown in the above example, if the number of occupants increases, the cargo and luggage load equaling the weight of the occupant who got on later, by an amount. In other words, if an increase in the number of occupants causes an excess of the total load capacity (combined weight of occupants plus cargo and luggage load), you must reduce the cargo and luggage on your vehicle.
Things that must not be carried in the luggage compartment

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the luggage compartment:

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

Storage precautions

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible.
- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations as the item may get under the brake or accelerator pedal and prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, block the driver’s vision, or hit the driver or passenger, causing an accident:
  - At the feet of the driver
  - On the passenger seat (when stacking items)
  - On the package tray
  - On the instrument panel
  - On the dashboard
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment, as they may shift and injure someone during sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is not designed for passengers. The passenger should ride in the seat with the seat belt properly fastened. Otherwise, the passenger is much more likely to suffer death or serious bodily injury, in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

Capacity and distribution

- Do not exceed the maximum axle weight rating or the total vehicle weight rating.
- Even if the total load of occupant’s weight and the cargo load is less than the total load capacity, do not apply the load unevenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.
Vehicle load limits include total load capacity, seating capacity, towing capacity and cargo capacity.

- **Total load capacity: 345 lb. (155 kg)**
  Total load capacity means the combined weight of occupants, cargo and luggage.

- **Seating capacity: 2 occupants**
  Seating capacity means the maximum number of occupants whose estimated average weight is 150 lb. (68 kg) per person.

- **Towing capacity**
  Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle.

- **Cargo capacity**
  Cargo capacity may increase or decrease depending on the weight and the number of occupants.

- **Total load capacity and seating capacity**
  These details are also described on the tire and loading information label. (→P. 277)

---

### CAUTION

- **Overloading the vehicle**
  Do not overload the vehicle. It may not only cause damage to the tires, but also degrade steering and braking ability, resulting in an accident.
2-5. Driving information

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

■ Pre-winter preparations

● Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  • Engine coolant
  • Washer fluid

● Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires.
  Ensure that all tires are the specified size and the same brand.

■ Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions.

● Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.

● To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.

● Remove any ice that has accumulated on the vehicle chassis.

● Periodically check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated in the wheel well or on the brakes.

■ When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.
■ Tire grip at low temperatures
The tires fitted to the LFA are designed for dry road conditions. As such, tire grip on cold, snowy and/or icy roads will be reduced compared to standard tires. Be sure to use snow tires on snowy and/or icy roads and drive carefully at a speed appropriate for road and weather conditions.

■ Engine starting restrictions
In order to protect the engine, the engine may not start when the engine coolant temperature or engine oil temperature is below -13°F (-25°C). In that case, a buzzer will sound and “Temp low Engine cannot be started” will be shown on the meter. (→P. 327)

⚠️ CAUTION

■ Driving with snow tires
Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

● Use tires of the specified size.
● Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
● Do not drive in excess of 75 mph (120 km/h), regardless of the type of snow tires being used.
● Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

⚠️ NOTICE

■ Driving with tire chains
Do not fit tire chains. Tire chains may damage the vehicle body and suspension, and adversely affect driving performance.

■ Repairing or replacing snow tires
Request repairs or replacement of snow tires from Lexus dealers or legitimate tire retailers. This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.
2-5. Driving information

Trailer towing

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Lexus also does not recommend the installation of a tow hitch or the use of a tow hitch carrier for a wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. The LFA is not designed for trailer towing or for the use of tow hitch mounted carriers.
2-5. Driving information

Dinghy towing

The LFA can be dinghy towed in a forward direction (with 4 wheels on the ground) behind a motor home.

Towing your vehicle with 4 wheels on the ground

To prevent damage to your vehicle, perform the following procedures before towing:

**STEP 1** Turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position.

**STEP 2** Select Neutral.

**STEP 3** Release the parking brake.

**STEP 4** Turn the ignition switch to the “ACC” position.

Ensure that the audio system and other powered devices have been turned off.

After towing, leave the engine in idle for at least 3 minutes before driving the vehicle.

Necessary equipment and accessories

Specialized equipment and accessories are required for dinghy towing. Contact the service branch of the motor home manufacturer regarding recommended equipment.
### NOTICE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dinghy towing direction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not tow the vehicle backward. Doing so may cause serious damage.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To prevent the steering from locking</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ensure the ignition switch is in the “ACC” position.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. Interior features

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger
   Automatic air conditioning system (with navigation system) ............... 186
   Automatic air conditioning system (without navigation system) ..........  194
   Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers ..........................  201

3-2. Using the audio system
   Audio/video system some basics ..............................................  202

3-3. Using the interior lights
   Interior lights list............................... 207

3-4. Using the storage features
   List of storage features........ 209
   • Glove box ........................................ 210
   • Door pockets.............................. 212

3-5. Other interior features
   Sun visors ........................................ 213
   Power outlet ....................................... 214
   Floor mats ...................................... 215
   Luggage compartment features ...................... 218
   Safety Connect ............................ 219
3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Automatic air conditioning system (with navigation system)

Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.
3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Displaying the operation screen

Press the “MENU” button.

Select “Climate” by operating the Remote Touch knob and then press the enter button.

1. Driver's side temperature display
2. Outside temperature display
3. Dual mode switch
4. Passenger’s side temperature display
5. Air outlet switches
6. Fan speed control switches
7. Cooling and dehumidification function on/off switch
8. Talk switch
9. Passenger’s side temperature control button
10. Automatic mode button
11. Outside/recirculated air mode button
12. Enter button
13. Remote Touch knob
14. “MENU” button
15. Windshield defogger button
16. Driver’s side temperature control button
17. “OFF” button
3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

**Using the automatic air conditioning system**

**STEP 1** Press \( \text{AUTO} \).

The air conditioning system begins to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

**STEP 2** Press \( \) on the driver’s side to increases the temperature and \( \) to decrease the temperature.

When “DUAL” is selected on the operation screen (the indicator is on) or the passenger’s side temperature control button is pressed, the temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be adjusted separately.

**Adjusting the settings manually**

- **Turning the cooling and dehumidification function on and off**
  Select “A/C” on the operation screen.
  The air conditioning system turns on and off each time “A/C” is selected.

- **Adjusting the temperature setting**
  Press \( \) to increase the temperature and \( \) to decrease the temperature.
  When “DUAL” is selected on the operation screen (the indicator is on) or the passenger’s side temperature control button is pressed, the temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be adjusted separately.

- **Adjusting the fan speed**
  Select any switch of \( \) (decrease ↔ increase) on the operation screen.
  Press \( \) to turn the fan off.
3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

■ Changing the air outlets
Select any switch of on the operation screen.
Air flows as shown below according to the mode selected.

- **Upper body**
- **Upper body and feet**
- **Feet**
3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Feet and windshield

Recirculated air mode will automatically switch to outside air mode.

Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press 🔄. The mode switches between outside air mode (indicator off) and recirculated air mode (indicator on) each time the button is pressed.

Defogging the windshield

Press 🛣. The air conditioning system operates automatically*.

Recirculated air mode will automatically switch to outside air mode. It is not possible to return to recirculated air mode when the switch is on.

*: The air conditioning system will not operate if, after 🛣 is pressed once, “A/C” is selected on the operation screen and then 🛣 is pressed again.
Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

Center

1. Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
2. Open the vent
3. Close the vent

Right and left side

1. Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
2. Open the vent
3. Close the vent

Using the voice command system

The voice command system is used to turn the air conditioning system on and off and to change temperature settings.

Press the talk switch.

For operating instructions, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual” under the heading “Voice command system”.

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

■ Using the automatic mode
Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur:

● The system may switch automatically to recirculated air mode when the coolest temperature setting is selected when the ambient temperature is high.

● Immediately after is pressed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.

● Cool air may flow to the area around the upper body when the heater is on.

■ Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes
Recirculated air mode or outside air mode may be automatically switched to in accordance with the temperature setting and the inside temperature.

■ Using the system in outside air mode
As hot air from the hood grilles may flow through the air outlets, it is recommended that the air conditioning system be turned on while outside air mode is used.

■ Using the system in recirculated air mode
The windows will fog up more easily if recirculated air mode is used.

■ When is selected for the air outlets used
For your driving comfort, air flowing to the feet may be warmer than air flowing to the upper body depending on the temperature setting.

■ When the outside air temperature approaches 32°F (0°C)
The air conditioning system may not operate even when “A/C” is selected on the operation screen.

■ Air conditioning odors
During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.

To reduce potential odors from occurring:

- It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
- The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.
Outside temperature display

- The temperature display shows temperatures within the range of -40°F (-40°C) and 122°F (50°C).
- In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change:
  - When the vehicle is stopped, or moving at low speeds (less than 15 mph [25 km/h])
  - When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)
- When “--” or “E” is displayed, the system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

CAUTION

To prevent the windshield from fogging up

Do not use during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.
3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Automatic air conditioning system (without navigation system)

Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

1. Driver’s side temperature display
2. Fan speed display
3. Air outlets display
4. Passenger’s side temperature display
5. Passenger’s side temperature control button
6. Automatic mode button
7. Outside/recirculated air mode button
8. Cooling and dehumidification function on/off button
9. Air outlet selector button
10. Fan speed control button
11. Dual mode button
12. Windshield defogger button
13. Driver’s side temperature control button
14. “OFF” button
3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Using the automatic air conditioning system

**STEP 1** Press (AUTO). The air conditioning system begins to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

**STEP 2** Press on the driver’s side to increase the temperature and to decrease the temperature.

When is pressed (the indicator on is on) or the passenger’s side temperature control button is pressed, the temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be adjusted separately.

Adjusting the settings manually

- **Turning the cooling and dehumidification function on and off**
  
  Press (A/C).
  
  The air conditioning system turns on and off each time the button is pressed.

- **Adjusting the temperature setting**
  
  Press to increase the temperature and to decrease the temperature.
  
  When is pressed (the indicator on is on) or the passenger’s side temperature control button is pressed, the temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be adjusted separately.

- **Adjusting the fan speed**
  
  Press “∧” on to increase the fan speed and “∨” to decrease the fan speed.
  
  Press to turn the fan off.
3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

■ Changing the air outlets

Press 🔄 MODE 🔄.

The air outlets used are switched each time the button is pressed. The air flow shown on the display indicates the following:

- **Upper body**

- **Upper body and feet**

- **Feet**
3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Feet and windshield
Recirculated air mode will automatically switch to outside air mode.

Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes
Press .
The mode switches between outside air mode (indicator off) and recirculated air mode (indicator on) each time the button is pressed.

Defogging the windshield
Press .
The air conditioning system operates automatically*.
Recirculated air mode will automatically switch to outside air mode. It is not possible to return to recirculated air mode when the switch is on.

*: The air conditioning system will not operate if, after is pressed once, is pressed and then is pressed again.
3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

**Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets**

**Center**

1. Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
2. Open the vent
3. Close the vent

**Right and left side**

1. Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
2. Open the vent
3. Close the vent
- **Using the automatic mode**
  Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur:
  - The system may switch automatically to recirculated air mode when the coolest temperature setting is selected when the ambient temperature is high.
  - Immediately after is pressed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.
  - Cool air may flow to the area around the upper body when the heater is on.

- **Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes**
  Recirculated air mode or outside air mode may be automatically switched to in accordance with the temperature setting and the inside temperature.

- **Using the system in outside air mode**
  As hot air from the hood grilles may flow through the air outlets, it is recommended that the air conditioning system be turned on while outside air mode is used.

- **Using the system in recirculated air mode**
  The windows will fog up more easily if recirculated air mode is used.

- **When is selected for the air outlets used**
  For your driving comfort, air flowing to the feet may be warmer than air flowing to the upper body depending on the temperature setting.

- **When the outside air temperature approaches 32°F (0°C)**
  The air conditioning system may not operate even when is pressed.

- **Air conditioning odors**
  - During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
  - To reduce potential odors from occurring:
    - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
    - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.
### CAUTION

- **To prevent the windshield from fogging up**
  
  Do not use ⏬ during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

### NOTICE

- **To prevent battery discharge**
  
  Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.
3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers

Defoggers are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

On/off

The defoggers will automatically turn off after 15 to 60 minutes. The operation time changes according to the ambient temperature and vehicle speed.

The defogger can be operated when

The ignition switch is in the “ON” position.

The outside rear view mirror defoggers

Turning the rear window defogger on will turn the outside rear view mirror defoggers on.

⚠️ CAUTION

⚠️ When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on

Do not touch the outside surface of the rear view mirror, as they can become very hot and burn you.
The audio/video system can be used when the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.
For operating instructions, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual” under the heading “AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM”.

Type A

1 Function menu tab
   To control the radio, DVD changer, Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod, select the screen tabs.

2 Function menu display screen
   To control the radio, DVD changer, Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod, select the screen buttons.

3 “CH·DISC” button
   Push the “▲” or “▼” button to select a preset station or a selected disc.

4 “AUX·USB” button
   Push this button to turn the Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod on.

*: If equipped
5 “DISC” button
   Push this button to turn the DVD changer on.

6 “TUNE/FILE” knob
   Turn this knob to move the station band and files up or down.

7 “LOAD” button
   Push this button to insert the discs.

8 Disc slot
   Insert discs into the slot after pushing the “LOAD” button.

9 “ ” button
   Push this button to eject the discs.

10 “PWR/VOL” knob
    Push this knob to turn the audio/video system on and off, and turn it to adjust the volume.

11 “SAT” button
    Push the button to choose a SAT station.

12 “AM·FM” button
    Push this button to choose a radio station. (AM, FM1, FM2)

13 “SEEK·TRACK” button
    Push either side of this button to seek up or down for a station, or to access a desired track, file or chapter.
3-2. Using the audio system

Type B

1 Function menu tab
   To control the radio, DVD changer, Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod, select the screen tabs.

2 Function menu display screen
   To control the radio, DVD changer, Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod, select the screen buttons.

3 “CH·DISC” button
   Push the “∧” or “∨” button to select a preset station or a selected disc.

4 “AUX·USB” button
   Push this button to turn the Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod on.

5 “DISC” button
   Push this button to turn the DVD changer on.

6 “TUNE/FILE” knob
   Turn this knob to move the station band and files up or down.

7 “LOAD” button
   Push this button to insert the discs.
Disc slot
Insert discs into the slot after pushing the “LOAD” button.

“ ” button
Push this button to eject the discs.

“PWR/VOL” knob
Push this knob to turn the audio/video system on and off, and turn it to adjust the volume.

“FM” button
Push this button to choose an FM station.

“AM” button
Push this button to choose an AM station.

“SEEK·TRACK” button
Push either side of this button to seek up or down for a station, or to access a desired track, file or chapter.

Loading discs

- Loading a single disc
  **STEP 1** Push the “LOAD” button.
  **STEP 2** When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a disc after the disc slot door opens.

- Loading multiple discs
  **STEP 1** Push and hold the “LOAD” button until you hear a beep.
  **STEP 2** When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a disc after the disc slot door opens.
  **STEP 3** After inserting a disc, wait until the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, then insert the next disc after the disc slot door has opened.
  **STEP 4** Repeat steps 2 and 3 until you have inserted all discs.

To cancel the operation, push the “LOAD” or “DISC” button. If you do not insert a disc within 15 seconds, loading will be canceled automatically.
3-2. Using the audio system

Ejecting discs

- Ejecting a disc
  
  **STEP 1** Select the disc to be ejected.
  
  **STEP 2** Push the “eba” button and remove the disc.

- Ejecting all discs
  
  Push and hold the “eba” button until you hear a beep, then remove the discs.

Using cellular phones

Interference may be heard through the audio/video system’s speakers if a cellular phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio/video system is operating.

⚠️ NOTICE

- **To prevent battery discharge**
  
  Do not leave the audio/video system on longer than necessary with the engine off.

- **To avoid damaging the audio/video system**
  
  Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids over the audio/video system.
3-3. Using the interior lights

**Interior lights list**

1. Interior lights (→ P. 208)
2. Down light
3. Ignition switch light
4. Door courtesy lights

**Illuminated entry system**

The lights automatically turn on/off according to the ignition switch position, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, and whether the doors are open/closed.

**To prevent battery discharge**

If the interior lights remain on when a door is not fully closed and the interior light switch (door position on/off) is on, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

**Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer**

Settings (e.g. The time elapsed before lights turn off) can be changed.
(Customizable features → P. 383)
3-3. Using the interior lights

**Interior lights**

1. Door position on/off
2. On/off
3-4. Using the storage features

List of storage features

- Door pockets
- Glove box

⚠️ CAUTION

Items that should not be left in the storage spaces

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.
The glove box can be opened by pressing the lock release button and locked and unlocked using the premium master key or master key.

1. Open
2. Unlock
3. Lock

The following items are attached on the back of the glove box lid:

1. Tire pressure gauge (→P. 278)
2. Penlight (→P. 211)
■ Bottle holder

The glove box can be used as a bottle holder. (Certain bottles may not be stored depending on their size or shape.)

■ Penlight

1. Turn the bottom portion to remove it.
2. Insert batteries. (2 AA batteries, sold separately)
3. Install the bottom portion.
4. On/off

⚠️ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Keep the glove box closed.
In the event of sudden braking, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the open glove box or the items stored inside.

⚠️ NOTICE

■ When using the bottle holder

Ensure that the cap on the bottle is tightly closed before storing the bottle in the bottle holder.
Failure to do so may cause liquid to leak onto the electrical components, resulting in a malfunction.
3-4. Using the storage features

## Door pockets

![Door pockets](image)

### CAUTION

**Caution while driving**

When using the door pocket, do not insert items that are likely to roll about or that are taller than the top of the door pocket. In case of sudden braking, these items may fly out, resulting in an unexpected accident.
3-5. Other interior features

Sun visors

1. To set the visor in the forward position, flip it down.
2. To set the visor in the side position, flip down, unhook, and swing it to the side.

■ Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is provided on the passenger’s sun visor.
3-5. Other interior features

Power outlet

The power outlet can be used for 12 V accessories that run on less than 10 A.

**STEP 1** Open the glove box. (→P. 210)

**STEP 2** Open the lid.

The power outlet can be used when

The ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>NOTICE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>To avoid damaging the power outlet</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **To prevent blown fuses** |
| Do not use an accessory that uses more than 12 V 10 A. |

| **To prevent battery discharge** |
| Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is not running. |
3-5. Other interior features

Floor mats

Use only floor mats designed specifically for the LFA. Fix them securely in place onto the floor.

■ Removing the floor mats

**STEP 1**
Turn the retaining hooks (clips) and lift up the floor mat.

**STEP 2**
Driver’s seat only: Pull the floor mat out from the groove under the heel stopper.
Installing the floor mats

**Driver’s seat only:**
Insert the front of the floor mat into the groove under the heel stopper.

**STEP 1**
Heel stopper

**STEP 2**
Place the holes at the rear end of the floor mat over the retaining hooks (clips).

**STEP 3**
Turn the retaining hooks (clips).
CAUTION

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause the driver’s floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle, leading to a serious accident.

When installing a floor mat on the driver’s seat floor

- Only use floor mat designed for the driver’s seat.
- Do not use floor mats designed for other models even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Insert the floor mat firmly into the groove under the heel stopper.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips).
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.
- Do not install the floor mat designed for the passenger’s seat on the driver’s seat floor.

Before driving

Check the following on a regular basis:

- The front of the floor mat is inserted firmly into the groove under the heel stopper.
- The floor mat is held securely in the proper position by the retaining hooks (clips).

Make sure to perform these checks after cleaning the floor.
3-5. Other interior features

Luggage compartment features

■ Tonneau cover

Attach the hooks to the brackets.

■ First-aid kit installation

A first-aid kit can be installed as shown.
Safety Connect is a subscription-based telematics service that uses Global Positioning System (GPS) data and embedded cellular technology to provide safety and security features to subscribers. Safety Connect is supported by Lexus’ designated response center, which operates 24 hours per day, 7 days per week.

Safety Connect service is available by subscription on select, telematics hardware-equipped vehicles.

By using the Safety Connect service, you are agreeing to be bound by the Telematics Subscription Service Agreement and its Terms and Conditions, as in effect and amended from time to time, a current copy of which is available at Lexus.com. All use of the Safety Connect service is subject to such then-applicable Terms and Conditions.

System components

1. Microphone
2. “SOS” button
3. LED light indicators

*: If equipped
3-5. Other interior features

■ Services
Subscribers have the following Safety Connect services available:

● Automatic Collision Notification*
  Helps drivers receive necessary response from emergency service providers. (→P. 222)

● Stolen Vehicle Location
  Helps drivers in the event of vehicle theft. (→P. 223)

● Emergency Assistance Button (SOS)
  Connects drivers to response-center support. (→P. 223)

● Enhanced Roadside Assistance
  Provides drivers various on-road assistance. (→P. 223)

■ Subscription
After you have signed the Telematics Subscription Service Agreement and are enrolled, you can begin receiving services.

A variety of subscription terms is available for purchase. Contact your Lexus dealer, call 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) or push the “SOS” button in your vehicle for further subscription details.
■ Safety Connect Services Information

- Phone calls using the vehicle’s Bluetooth® technology will not be possible during Safety Connect.

- Safety Connect is available beginning Fall 2009 on select Lexus models. Contact with the Safety Connect response center is dependent upon the telematics device being in operative condition, cellular connection availability, and GPS satellite signal reception, which can limit the ability to reach the response center or receive emergency service support. Enrollment and Telematics Subscription Service Agreement required. A variety of subscription terms is available; charges vary by subscription term selected.

- Automatic Collision Notification, Emergency Assistance and Stolen Vehicle Location will function in the United States, including Hawaii and Alaska, and in Canada, and Enhanced Roadside Assistance will function in the United States (except Hawaii) and in Canada. No Safety Connect services will function outside of the United States in countries other than Canada.

- Safety Connect services are not subject to section 255 of the Telecommunications Act and the device is not TTY compatible.

■ Languages

The Safety Connect response center will offer support in multiple languages. The Safety Connect system will offer voice prompts in English and Spanish. Please indicate your language of choice when enrolling.

■ When contacting the response center

You may be unable to contact the response center if the network is busy.
Safety Connect LED light Indicators

When the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position, the red indicator light comes on for 2 seconds then turns off. Afterward, the green indicator light comes on, indicating that the service is active. The following indicator light patterns indicate specific system usage conditions:

- Green indicator light on = Active service
- Green indicator light flashing = Safety Connect call in process
- Red indicator light (except at vehicle start-up) = System malfunction (contact your Lexus dealer)
- No indicator light (off) = Safety Connect service not active

Safety Connect services

Automatic Collision Notification

In case of either airbag deployment or severe rear-end collision, the system is designed to automatically call the response center. The responding agent receives the vehicle’s location and attempts to speak with the vehicle occupants to assess the level of emergency. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency, contacts the nearest emergency services provider to describe the situation, and requests that assistance be sent to the location.
■ Stolen Vehicle Location
If your vehicle is stolen, Safety Connect can work with local authorities to assist them in locating and recovering the vehicle. After filing a police report, call the Safety Connect response center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) and follow the prompts for Safety Connect to initiate this service.

In addition to assisting law enforcement with recovery of a stolen vehicle, Safety-Connect-equipped vehicle location data may, under certain circumstances, be shared with third parties to locate your vehicle. Further information is available at Lexus.com.

■ Emergency Assistance Button (“SOS”)
In the event of an emergency on the road, push the “SOS” button to reach the Safety Connect response center. The answering agent will determine your vehicle’s location, assess the emergency, and dispatch the necessary assistance required.

If you accidentally press the “SOS” button, tell the response-center agent that you are not experiencing an emergency.

■ Enhanced Roadside Assistance
Enhanced Roadside Assistance adds GPS data to the already included warranty-based Lexus roadside service.

Subscribers can press the “SOS” button to reach a Safety Connect response-center agent, who can help with a wide range of needs, such as: towing, flat tire, fuel delivery, etc. For a description of the Enhanced Roadside Assistance services and their limitations, please see the Safety Connect Terms and Conditions, which are available at Lexus.com.
Safety information for Safety Connect

Important! Read this information before using Safety Connect.

Exposure to radio frequency signals

The Safety Connect system installed in your vehicle is a low-power radio transmitter and receiver. It receives and also sends out radio frequency (RF) signals.

In August 1996, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) adopted RF exposure guidelines with safety levels for mobile wireless phones. Those guidelines are consistent with the safety standards previously set by the following U.S. and international standards bodies.

- ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection) [1996]

Those standards were based on comprehensive and periodic evaluations of the relevant scientific literature. Over 120 scientists, engineers, and physicians from universities, and government health agencies and industries reviewed the available body of research to develop the ANSI Standard (C95.1).

The design of Safety Connect complies with the FCC guidelines in addition to those standards.
License
Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:
4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501
5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239
5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338
5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569
5,710,784 5,778,338

Certification for Lexus Enform with Safety Connect
FCC ID: O9EGTM1
FCC ID: O6Y-CDMRF101
NOTE:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.
3.5. Other interior features
4-1. Maintenance and care
   Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior............ 228
   Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior.............. 235

4-2. Maintenance
   Maintenance requirements .................... 240
   General maintenance ........ 242
   Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs............... 246

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance
   Do-it-yourself service precautions.......................... 247
   Hood........................................ 250
   Positioning a floor jack ....... 253
   Engine compartment .......... 256
   Adding washer fluid .............. 264
   Battery ...................................... 265
   Tires............................................ 270
   Tire inflation pressure............ 277
   Wheels ....................................... 281
   Air conditioning filter ........... 283
   Wireless remote control battery........................ 285
   Checking and replacing fuses ........................................ 287
   Light bulbs.............................. 299
4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition.

Standard Colors and Special Selection Colors (except Matte Black)

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.
  - If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

Matte Black (Special Selection Color)

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use a neutral detergent and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Never use wax or abrasive compounds.
**■ Automatic car washes**
Do not use automatic car washes as they may scratch the vehicle body and damage the paint.

**■ High pressure car washes**
- Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows or rear hatch.
- Before car wash, check that the fuel filler door on your vehicle is closed properly.

**■ Aluminum wheels**
- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners. Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.
- Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, for example after driving for long distance in the hot weather.
- Wash detergent from the wheels immediately after use.

**■ Cleaning the rear quarter glass**
As the rear quarter glasses are made of polycarbonate, follow the procedure below.

1. **STEP 1** Remove dust and dirt on the surface with plenty of water.
2. **STEP 2** Clean the surface using a mild soap or neutral detergent.
3. **STEP 3** Rinse it with adequate water.

**■ Cleaner precaution**
Do not use abrasive cleaners.

**■ Outside rear view mirror rain-clearing coating**
Observe the following precautions in order to retain the rain-clearing properties of the mirrors:
- Clean the mirrors using a car shampoo or glass cleaner that does not contain silicone or an abrasive compound, and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Allow the mirrors to be exposed to direct sunlight for 1 to 2 days.
4-1. Maintenance and care

CAUTION

■ When washing the vehicle

Do not apply water to the inside of the engine compartment. Doing so may cause the electrical components etc. to catch fire.

■ To prevent burns

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the hood grilles, bezels in the radiator grilles, or exhaust pipes and surrounding area until they have cooled sufficiently, as these components may cause burns.
NOTICE

■ Application of coatings to the vehicle body

Do not apply any kind of coating to the vehicle body as doing so may damage the paint or reduce its durability.

■ To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels etc.)

Observe the following precautions:

● Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
  • After driving near the sea coast
  • After driving on salted roads
  • If coal tar or tree sap is present on the paint surface
  • If dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings are present on the paint surface
  • After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
  • If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled with dust or mud
  • If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface

● If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.

● To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

For the Matte Black, pay attention to the following as well:

● If anything is spilled on a painted surface, wipe it off as soon as possible.
  If spilled washer fluid or alkaline fluids are left as is, the paint in the affected area may deteriorate, causing blemishing.

● Do not wax or apply coating to the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause a change in the body surface’s texture or irregularities in the paint.
4-1. Maintenance and care

⚠️ NOTICE

■ When washing the vehicle

Observe the following precautions to prevent damage to the exhaust system:

● Do not flush water over or into the hood grilles (especially the arrowed portion in the illustration).

● Do not flush water over or into the exhaust pipes and surrounding area or the bezels in the radiator grilles until they have cooled sufficiently.

■ Cleaning the exterior lights

● Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.

● Do not apply wax on the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.
NOTICE

■ Rear quarter glass

As the rear quarter glass is made of polycarbonate and easily damaged, observe the following precautions:

● When cleaning the rear quarter glass:
  • Do not use wax, window cleaner or abrasive cleaner.
  • Do not touch glass surface with anything hard or sharp.
  • Do not use window scraper or deicer.

● Do not attach stickers or apply water repellent coating to the rear quarter glass. Contact with glue or other agents may cause the glass to become cloudy or blemished.

■ Air inlets

Do not insert foreign objects into the air inlets as doing so may damage the body or radiator components. Should an object become lodged in an air inlet, do not attempt to take it out. Instead, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Rear quarter fin (if equipped)

Do not apply force to the rear quarter fin such as by pressing on it as doing so may cause damage.
4-1. Maintenance and care

⚠️ NOTICE

■ When using high pressure car washes

Do not aim the head of the nozzle at the hood grilles or radiator grilles. Doing so may negatively affect the engine or cause a malfunction in the electric cooling fan motors that may result in overheating.
4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:

■ Protecting the vehicle interior
  Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

■ Cleaning the plastic areas and the satin-finish metal accent areas
  ● Wipe dirty surfaces with a dampened soft cloth or synthetic chamois.
  ● Wipe away any remaining moisture with a soft, dry cloth.

■ Cleaning the CFRP (Carbon Fiber Reinforced Plastics) areas
  ● Wipe dirty surfaces with a dampened soft cloth or synthetic chamois.
  ● Wipe away any remaining moisture with a soft, dry cloth.
  Do not rub the matte painted surfaces strongly as doing so may damage the surface or cause it to shine.

■ Cleaning the leather areas
  ● Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
  ● Wipe off any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.
    Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.
  ● Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
  ● Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.
- **Cleaning the artificial leather (Alcantara®) areas**
  - Brush the surfaces using a soft brush.
   _do not brush hard as doing so may cause damage._
  - Wipe the surfaces clean with a soft cloth that has been dampened in cold or lukewarm water and squeezed out.
  - Allow the artificial leather (Alcantara®) to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

- **Caring for leather areas**
  Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

- **Shampooing the carpets**
  There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not use water. Wipe dirty surfaces and let them dry. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

- **Seat belts**
  Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

- **Cleaning the partition glass**
  As the partition glass is made of polycarbonate, follow the procedure below.
  
  **STEP 1** Remove dust with a soft, dampened cloth.
  **STEP 2** Clean the surface using a mild soap or neutral detergent.
  **STEP 3** Remove residual soap or detergent with a dampened cloth.
  **STEP 4** Wipe away any remaining moisture with a soft, dry cloth.
CAUTION

■ Water in the vehicle
  ● Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle. Doing so may cause electrical components etc. to malfunction or catch fire.
  ● Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P. 63) An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)
  Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver’s view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Cleaning the leather areas of the instrument panel
  Do not use any protective agents (coatings etc). Doing so may cause the instrument panel to reflect onto the windshield, obstructing the front view and possibly causing an accident.
4-1. Maintenance and care

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTICE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>■ Cleaning detergents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>● Do not use the following agents, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Organic solvents such as benzene, thinner, gasoline or alcohol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Alkaline or acidic detergent, dye, or bleach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>● Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel’s or other interior part’s painted surface may be damaged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ Preventing damage to leather surfaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>● Remove any dust or dirt from leather surfaces immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>● Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>● Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or containing wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ Floor mats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not wash the mats with water as doing so may damage the leather.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ Water on the floor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not wash the vehicle floor with water. Vehicle systems may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components such as the audio system above or under the floor of the vehicle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ Partition glass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As the partition glass is made of polycarbonate and easily damaged, observe the following precautions:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>● When cleaning the partition glass:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Do not use wax, window cleaner or abrasive cleaner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Do not touch glass surface with anything hard or sharp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>● Do not attach stickers to the partition glass. Contact with glue or other agents may cause the glass to become cloudy or blemished.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NOTICE

Cleaning the inside of the rear window

- Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.
4-2.Maintenance

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance are essential. It is the owner’s responsibility to perform regular checks. Lexus recommends performing the following maintenance:

■ General maintenance
  General maintenance should be performed on a daily basis. This can be done by yourself or by a Lexus dealer.

■ Scheduled maintenance
  Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

  For details about maintenance items and schedules, refer to the “Warranty and Service Guide”, “Owner’s Manual Supplement” or “Scheduled Maintenance”.

■ Do-it-yourself maintenance
  You can perform some maintenance procedures by yourself. Please be aware that do-it-yourself maintenance may affect warranty coverage.

  The use of Lexus repair manuals is recommended.


■ Repair and replacement
  It is recommended that genuine Lexus parts be used for repairs to ensure performance of each system. If non-Lexus parts are used in replacement or if a repair shop other than a Lexus dealer performs repairs, confirm the warranty coverage.

■ Allow inspection and repairs to be performed by a Lexus dealer

  ● Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists and are kept up to date with the latest service information. They are well informed about the operation of all systems on your vehicle.

  ● Keep a copy of the repair order. It proves that the maintenance that has been performed is under warranty coverage. If any problem should arise while your vehicle is under warranty, your Lexus dealer will promptly take care of it.
CAUTION

If your vehicle is not properly maintained
Improper maintenance could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible serious injury or death.

Handling of the battery

- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and a wide variety of automobile components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and other reproductive harm. Work in a well ventilated area.
- Oils, fuels and fluids contained in vehicles as well as waste produced by component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Avoid exposure and wash any affected area immediately.
- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P. 265)
Listed below are the general maintenance items that should be performed at the intervals specified in the “Warranty and Services Guide” or “Owners Manual Supplement”. It is recommended that any problem you notice should be brought to the attention of your Lexus dealer or qualified service shop for advice.

### Engine compartment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Check points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brake fluid</td>
<td>Is the brake fluid at the correct level? (→P. 262)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine coolant</td>
<td>Is the engine coolant at the correct level? (→P. 260)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil</td>
<td>Is the engine oil at the correct level? (→P. 132)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exhaust system</td>
<td>There should not be any fumes or strange sounds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condenser</td>
<td>The condenser should be free from foreign objects. (→P. 261)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Luggage compartment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Check points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Battery</td>
<td>Check the connections. (→P. 265)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Vehicle interior

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Check points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accelerator pedal</td>
<td>• The accelerator pedal should move smoothly (without uneven pedal effort or catching).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake pedal</td>
<td>• Does the brake pedal move smoothly?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Does the brake pedal have appropriate clearance from the floor? (→P. 364)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Does the brake pedal have the correct amount of free play? (→P. 364)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brakes</td>
<td>• The vehicle should not pull to one side when the brakes are applied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The brakes should work effectively.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The brake pedal should not feel spongy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The brake pedal should not get too close to the floor when the brakes are applied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicators/buzzers</td>
<td>• Do the indicators and buzzers function properly?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lights</td>
<td>• Do all the lights come on?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking brake</td>
<td>• When parked on a slope and the parking brake is on, is the vehicle securely stopped?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat belts</td>
<td>• Do the seat belts operate smoothly?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The seat belts should not be damaged.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Maintenance

## Vehicle exterior

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Check points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Seats</td>
<td>• Do the seat controls operate properly?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering wheel</td>
<td>• Does the steering wheel rotate smoothly?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Does the steering wheel have the correct amount of free play?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• There should not be any strange sounds coming from the steering wheel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doors</td>
<td>• Do the doors operate smoothly?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine hood</td>
<td>• Does the engine hood lock system work properly?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluid leaks</td>
<td>• There should not be any signs of fluid leakage after the vehicle has been parked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tires</td>
<td>• Is the tire inflation pressure correct?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The tires should not be damaged or excessively worn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The wheel bolts should not be loose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washer fluid</td>
<td>• Is there sufficient washer fluid? (→P. 264)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CAUTION

- **If the engine is running**
  
  Turn the engine off and ensure that there is adequate ventilation before performing maintenance checks.
Some states have vehicle emission inspection programs which include OBD (On Board Diagnostics) checks. The OBD system monitors the operation of the emission control system.

- **If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on**
  The OBD system determines that a problem exists somewhere in the emission control system. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test and may need to be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer to service the vehicle.

- **Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test:**
  - When the battery is disconnected or discharged
    Readiness codes that are set during ordinary driving are erased. Also, depending on your driving habits, the readiness codes may not be completely set.
  - When the fuel tank cap is loose
    The malfunction indicator lamp comes on as a temporary malfunction and your vehicle may not pass the I/M test.

- **When the malfunction indicator lamp goes off after several driving trips**
  The error code in the OBD system will not be cleared unless the vehicle is driven 40 or more times.

- **If your vehicle does not pass the I/M test**
  Contact your Lexus dealer to prepare the vehicle for re-testing.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedures as given in these sections.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Parts and tools</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Battery condition</td>
<td>• Warm water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Baking soda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Grease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Conventional wrench (for the positive terminal clamp bolt)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake fluid level</td>
<td>• FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Rag or paper towel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Funnel (used only for adding brake fluid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condenser</td>
<td>(→P. 261)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine coolant level</td>
<td>• “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Funnel (used only for adding engine coolant)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil level</td>
<td>(→P. 257)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• “Mobil 1 5W-50”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Funnel (used only for adding engine oil)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuses</td>
<td>(→P. 287)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Fuse with same amperage rating as original</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Items

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Parts and tools</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Tire inflation pressure (→P. 277) | • Tire pressure gauge  
• Compressed air source |
| Washer fluid (→P. 264) | • Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use)  
• Funnel  
(used only for adding water or washer fluid) |
The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions:

■ When working on the engine compartment
  ● Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.
  ● Be careful not to touch the engine, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
  ● Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper or rags, in the engine compartment.
  ● Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel. Fuel fumes are flammable.

■ When working near the electric cooling fan
  Be sure the ignition switch is in the “LOCK” position.
  With the ignition on, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on. (→P. 261)

■ Safety glasses
  Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in the eyes.

■ If you remove the air cleaner filters
  Driving with the air cleaner filters removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air. Also a backfire could cause a fire in the engine compartment.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Hood

Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.

**STEP 1**

Pull the hood release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.

**STEP 2**

Press the auxiliary catch lever to the left and lift the hood.

**STEP 3**

Take out the supporting rod.
Insert the supporting rod into the slot positioned on the side of the engine compartment.

Be sure that the supporting rod is fully inserted into the slot.

Insert the supporting rod into the slot on the hood.

**CAUTION**

- **Pre-driving check**
  Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
  If the hood is not locked properly it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

- **After inserting the supporting rod**
  Check to make sure that the supporting rod is properly inserted. Failure to do so may result in the hood closing by itself and possibly causing an injury.
CAUTION

Preventing personal injury

- Do not touch the hood grille or components in the engine compartment immediately after the engine has been driven as doing so may result in serious injuries such as burns.

- Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK” position and wait for a while before opening the hood so as to avoid getting caught in the moving parts of the engine. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death.

When closing the hood

Be careful not to get hands or other body parts caught when closing the hood as doing so may result in serious injury.

NOTICE

When closing the hood

- Do not apply excessive weight or force when closing the hood as doing so may result in damage.

- Be sure that the supporting rod is firmly secured with the clip positioned on the inside of the hood. Closing the hood without securing the supporting rod to the clip may result in damage to the hood, supporting rod or components in the engine compartment.
When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

Positioning a floor jack

Positioning an automotive jack stand
CAUTION

When raising your vehicle

Make sure to observe the following precautions to reduce the possibility of death or serious injury:

- Lift up the vehicle using a floor jack such as the one shown in the illustration.
  
  Minimum lifting saddle height (when lowered):
  3.1 in. (80 mm) or less

- When using a floor jack, follow the instructions of the manual provided with the jack.
- Do not put any part of your body underneath the vehicle when it is supported only by the floor jack.
- Always use floor jack and/or automotive jack stands on a solid, flat, level surface.
- Do not start the engine while the vehicle is supported by the floor jack.
- Stop the vehicle on level, firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and select Reverse.
- Make sure to set the floor jack or automotive jack stand properly at the jack point. Raising the vehicle with an improperly positioned floor jack or automotive jack stand will damage the vehicle and may cause the vehicle to fall off the floor jack or automotive jack stand.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in the vehicle.
- When raising the vehicle, do not place any objects on top of or underneath the floor jack.
- Do not touch the area shown in the illustration. Touching this area immediately after the vehicle has been driven may result in burns.
**NOTICE**

- **When using a floor jack**
  Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to the vehicle's underbody:
  - Make sure to position the floor jack correctly.
  - If the saddle of the floor jack protrudes outwards when the jack is in use, attach a rubber pad or another appropriate spacer.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Engine compartment

1. Engine oil filler cap  (→ P. 257)
2. Engine oil level dipstick  (→ P. 257)
3. Engine coolant reservoir  (→ P. 260)
4. Brake fluid reservoir  (→ P. 262)
5. Condenser  (→ P. 261)
6. Electric cooling fan
7. Fuse box  (→ P. 287)
Engine oil

Do not use the engine oil level dipstick in the engine compartment when checking or adding engine oil, as it is only designed to be used for oil replacement performed by your Lexus dealer. Make sure to use the meter for checking and adding engine oil.

■ Checking the engine oil

Check the oil level using the “Oil Level” display on the meter. ([→P.132])

■ Adding engine oil

If the oil level is low, add engine oil.

If unsure of how much oil to add, contact your Lexus dealer.

Prepare the following item and brand of oil:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oil brand</th>
<th>“Mobil 1 5W-50”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oil quantity*</td>
<td>Approximately 2.1 qt. (2.0L, 1.8 Imp. qt.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Clean funnel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*: Measured using the “Oil Level” display on the meter, between the minimum and maximum markings

**STEP 1** Check the oil level using the “Oil Level” display on the meter. ([→P.132])

**STEP 2** Stop the engine.

**STEP 3** Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.
Add oil based on the oil level shown on the meter.
Do not add more than 0.5 qt. (0.5 L, 0.4 Imp. qt.) at a time regardless of the oil level reading.

To check the oil level again, install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

Check the oil level using the “Oil Level” display and repeat the above procedure if more oil is required.
Even if the measurement result shows that the oil is below the maximum level, be careful not to add more oil than necessary.

Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

**Engine oil consumption**

- The amount of engine oil consumed depends on the oil viscosity, the quality of the oil and the way the vehicle is driven.
- More oil is consumed under driving conditions such as high speeds and frequent acceleration and deceleration.
- A new engine consumes more oil.
- When judging the amount of oil consumption, keep in mind that the oil may have become diluted, making it difficult to judge the true level accurately.
- Oil consumption: Max. 1.1 qt./600 miles (0.9 Imp. qt./600 miles, 1.0 L/1000 km)
- If your vehicle consumes more than 1.1 qt. (1.0 L, 0.9 Imp. qt.) every 600 miles (1000 km), contact your Lexus dealer.

**After the engine oil has been changed**
The “Oil Maintenance” display on the meter needs resetting. Have the display reset at your Lexus dealer. (⇒P. 132)
**CAUTION**

- **Used engine oil**
  - Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation or skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
  - Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
  - Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

**NOTICE**

- **To prevent serious engine damage**
  - Check the oil level on a regular basis.

- **When adding the engine oil**
  - Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
  - Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
  - Check the oil level using the “Oil Level” display on the meter every time you refill the vehicle.
  - Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Engine coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.

1 “LOW”

If the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant up to the “FULL” line.

2 “FULL”

3 Reservoir cap

Coolant selection

Only use “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or a similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

“Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -31°F [-35°C])

For more details about coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

If the coolant level drops within a short time of replenishing

Visually check the hoses and engine coolant reservoir cap.
If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.
CAUTION

■ When the engine is hot
Do not remove the engine coolant reservoir cap. The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing burns or other injuries.

NOTICE

■ When adding engine coolant
Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ If you spill coolant
Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging parts or paint.

Condenser

Check the condenser and clear any foreign objects. If it is extremely dirty or you are not sure of its condition, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

CAUTION

■ When the engine is hot
Do not touch the condenser, as it may be hot and cause burns.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

# Brake fluid

## Checking fluid level

The brake fluid level should be between the “MAX” and “MIN” lines on the tank.

## Adding fluid

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary item.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fluid type</th>
<th>FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Clean funnel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Brake fluid can absorb moisture from the air

Excess moisture in the brake fluid can cause a dangerous loss of braking efficiency. Use only newly opened brake fluid.

---

### CAUTION

## When filling the reservoir

Take care as brake fluid can harm your hands and eyes and damage painted surfaces.

If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately.

If you still experience discomfort, see a doctor.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

**NOTICE**

- **If the fluid level is low or high**
  It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear out or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
  If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, there may be a serious problem.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Adding washer fluid

If any washer does not work or the warning message appears on the meter, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.

**STEP 1** Open the fuel filler door. (→P. 49)

**STEP 2** Open the cap.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTICE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>■ Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid. Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle’s painted surfaces.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

■ Diluting washer fluid

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary. Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the washer fluid container.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Battery

The battery is located on the left-hand side of the luggage compartment.

**STEP 1** Open the rear hatch and remove the cover.

**STEP 2** Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks or loose clamps.

1. Terminals
2. Hold-down clamp
3. Ground cable
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Before recharging
When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following precautions before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

If the vehicle is not used for an extended period of time
Removing the specified fuse helps to suppress parasitic current (the draw on the battery when the vehicle is shut off).

STEP 1  Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK” position.
STEP 2  Open the fuse box lid in the engine compartment. (→P. 287)

STEP 3  While referring to “Fuse layout and ampere ratings” (→P. 290) or the back of the fuse box lid for the location, use the pull-out tool A to remove the “D/C CUT” fuse B and put it into C. Make sure that the fuse is firmly inserted.

Before commencing driving again, make sure to return the fuse to its original position.
Removing the negative (-) battery terminal

**STEP 1** Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK” position and check that the gear indicator is not displayed. (→P. 269)

**STEP 2** Open the rear hatch and remove the cover.

**STEP 3** Lift the lever.

**STEP 4** Disconnect the terminal.

- When reconnecting the terminal, make sure that the lever is lowered into the lock position.
- Do not disconnect the terminal while the power seats, power windows or other electrical devices are being operated.
- When the battery terminal is disconnected, the “Lap Timer” data and clock in the meter will be reset.
## CAUTION

### When connecting the battery terminal
Lower the lever into the locked position and ensure that the terminal is securely fixed in place.
If the terminal is not securely fixed in place, it may come off while the vehicle is being driven. This may cause the engine and electronic components to stop functioning, resulting in an accident.

### Chemicals in the battery
A battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the battery:
- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

### Where to safely charge the battery
Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is insufficient ventilation.

### How to recharge the battery
Only perform a slow charge (5 A or less). The battery may explode if charged at a quicker rate.
CAUTION

Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
  Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.

- If electrolyte gets on your skin
  Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.

- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
  It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.

- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
  Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Follow with milk of magnesia, beaten raw egg or vegetable oil. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

When replacing the battery

Use a battery designed for the LFA. Failure to do so may cause gas (hydrogen) to enter the passenger compartment, causing a fire or explosion.

For replacement of the battery, contact your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

Before disconnecting the battery terminal

Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK” position and check that the gear indicator turns off before disconnecting the battery terminal.

If the terminal is disconnected while the gear indicator is still displayed, the ASG (Automated Sequential Gearbox) computer may be negatively affected, possibly causing the engine not to start. If the terminal is accidentally disconnected while the indicator is on, contact your Lexus dealer.

When recharging the battery

Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Tires

Replace tires when the treadwear indicators show.

■ Checking tires

1. New tread
2. Treadwear indicator
3. Worn tread

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by the “TWI” or “Δ” marks, etc., molded on the sidewall of each tire.

■ The tire pressure warning system

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise. (→P. 315)

Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by your Lexus dealer. (→P. 272)
Initializing the tire pressure warning system

The tire pressure warning system must be initialized when the tire inflation pressure is changed (such as when changing traveling speed).

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the benchmark pressure.

How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

**STEP 1** Park the vehicle in safe place and turn the ignition switch off.
Initialization cannot be performed while the vehicle is moving.

**STEP 2** Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (→P. 366)
Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

**STEP 3** Turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position.

**STEP 4** Press and hold the tire pressure warning reset switch until the tire pressure warning light flashes slowly 3 times.

**STEP 5** Wait for a few minutes with the ignition switch in the “ON” position and then turn the ignition switch off.
Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code. Have the ID code registered by your Lexus dealer.

■ When to replace your vehicle’s tires
Tires should be replaced if:

- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric or bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

■ Replacing tires and wheels
If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light flashes for 1 minute to indicate a system malfunction.

■ Tire life
Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if they have seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

■ Routine tire inflation pressure checks
The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ Tire rotation
It is not possible to rotate the tires, as each tire is designed only for its original position on the vehicle.
Maximum load of tire

Check that the maximum load of the replacement tire is greater than 1/2 of the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) of either the front axle or the rear axle, whichever is greater.

For the GAWR, see the Certification Label. For the maximum load of the tire, see the load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure mentioned on the sidewall of the tire. (→P. 371)

Tire types

- Summer tires
  
  Summer tires are high-speed performance tires best suited to highway driving under dry conditions. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as snow tires, summer tires are inadequate for driving on snow-covered or icy roads. For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, the use of snow tires is recommended. When installing snow tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

- All season tires
  
  All season tires are designed to provide better traction in snow and to be adequate for driving in most winter conditions as well as for use year-round. All season tires, however, do not have adequate traction performance compared with snow tires in heavy or loose snow. Also, all season tires fall short in acceleration and handling performance compared with summer tires in highway driving.

- Snow tires
  
  For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, we recommend using snow tires. If you need snow tires, select tires of the same size, construction and load capacity as the originally installed tires. Since your vehicle has radial tires as original equipment, make sure your snow tires also have radial construction. Do not install studded tires without first checking local regulations for possible restrictions. Snow tires should be installed on all wheels. (→P. 180)

Initializing the tire pressure warning system

Initialize the system with the tire inflation pressure adjusted to the specified level.

If the tread on snow tires wears down below 0.16 in. (4 mm)

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.
## If you press the tire pressure warning reset switch accidentally

If initialization is performed, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level and initialize the tire pressure warning system again.

## When the initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed

Initialization can be completed in a few minutes. However, in the following cases, the settings have not been recorded and the system will not operate properly. If repeated attempts to record tire inflation pressure settings are unsuccessful, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the tire pressure warning light does not flash 3 times.
- After carrying out the initialization procedure, the tire pressure warning light flashes for 1 minute then stays on after driving for 20 minutes.

## Tire pressure warning system certification

**MODEL/FCC IDs:**

- Transmitter: PAXPMV107J
- Receiver: HYQ13BDK

**For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.**

**NOTE:**

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**FCC WARNING:**

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

**For vehicles sold in Canada**

**NOTE:**

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.
CAUTION

■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents. Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train, as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

● Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns. Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.

● Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.

● Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.

● Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle. Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.

■ To avoid burns

Do not touch the wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven, as they will be extremely hot.

■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system

Do not operate the tire pressure warning reset switch without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

⚠️ NOTICE

■ Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps

● When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may be damaged if not handled correctly.

● When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

■ To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (⇒P. 270)

■ Impacts from road surfaces

This vehicle is equipped with low profile tires, which may cause greater damage than usual to tires, wheels, body and suspension due to impacts from road surfaces. Therefore, pay attention to the following:

● Be sure to use proper tire inflation pressure.
  If tires are under-inflated, tires and wheels may be damaged more severely.

● Avoid potholes, uneven pavement, curbs and other road hazards.
  Failure to do so may lead to severe tire, wheel, body and suspension damage.

Even if there is no obvious damage, if the vehicle receives an impact from the road surface, have it inspected at your Lexus dealer.

■ If tire inflation pressure of each tire becomes low while driving

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

■ Tire precautions during cold weather

This vehicle is fitted with high-grip tires to enhance grip. These tires may be damaged if their temperature falls below -31°F (-35°C). In extremely cold conditions, use snow tires on the vehicle and keep the high-grip tires in a warm place.

Even if there is no obvious damage, if the temperature of the high-grip tires falls below -31°F (-35°C), have them inspected at your Lexus dealer.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Tire inflation pressure

■ Tire inflation pressure

The recommended cold tire inflation pressure and tire size is displayed on the tire and loading information label. (⇒ P. 366)
**Inspection and adjustment procedure**

1. **Tire valve**
2. **Tire pressure gauge**

**STEP 1** Remove the tire valve cap.

**STEP 2** Press the tip of the tire pressure gauge onto the tire valve.

**STEP 3** Read the pressure using the gauge gradations.

**STEP 4** If the tire inflation pressure is not at the recommended level, adjust the pressure.
   - If you add too much air, press the center of the valve to deflate.

**STEP 5** After completing the tire inflation pressure measurement and adjustment, apply soapy water to the valve and check for leakage.

**STEP 6** Put the tire valve cap back on.
■ Tire inflation pressure check interval
You should check tire inflation pressure every two weeks, or at least once a month.

■ Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure
Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:
● Reduced fuel efficiency
● Reduced driving comfort and tire life
● Reduced safety
● Damage to the drive train
If a tire needs frequent inflating, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure
When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:
● Check only when the tires are cold.
  If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has not been driven for more than 1 mile or 1.5 km, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
● Always use a tire pressure gauge.
  The appearance of the tire can be misleading. In addition, tire inflation pressure that is even just a few pounds off can affect ride quality and handling.
● Do not reduce tire inflation pressure after driving. It is normal for tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving.
● Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.
  Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

■ Tire inflation pressure display
Tire inflation pressure can be checked on the meter’s “Tire Pressure” display. (→P.132)
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

⚠️ CAUTION

Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

- Keep your tires properly inflated. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident causing death or serious injury:
  - Excessive wear
  - Uneven wear
  - Poor handling
  - Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
  - Poor sealing of the tire bead
  - Wheel deformation and/or tire separation
  - A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards

⚠️ NOTICE

When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

- Be sure to put the tire valve caps back on. Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve and cause air leakage, which could result in an accident. If the caps are lost, replace them as soon as possible.
If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause loss of handling control.
The wheel bolts used are exclusive to the LFA. When replacing the wheels or wheel bolts, consult your Lexus dealer.

■ Aluminum wheel precautions
   ● Use only Lexus wheel bolts designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
   ● When repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel bolts are still tight after driving 1000 miles (1600 km).
   ● Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent when balancing your wheels.

■ When replacing wheels
   The wheels of your Lexus are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advanced warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P. 271)

■ Wheel bolt torque
   An exclusive hub socket for the wheel bolts of the LFA is contained in the tool bag. A 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) drive extension bar and a torque wrench are required to tighten the bolts.
   **Tightening torque:**
   81 ft•lbf (110 N•m, 11.2 kgf•m)
CAUTION

■ When replacing wheels

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner’s Manual, as this may result in loss of handling control.

- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

■ Wheel bolts

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of death or serious injury:

- Do not over tighten.

- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts.
  
  Oil and grease may cause the wheel bolts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel bolts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts.

- If there are any cracks or deformations in the wheel bolts, or if the surface treatment becomes worn, have the wheel bolts replaced at your Lexus dealer. Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel bolts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.

- If the wheels are frequently removed and installed due to circuit driving etc., Lexus recommends periodic changing of the wheel bolts.

NOTICE

■ Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Lexus dealer.

- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle. Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.
The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

**STEP 1** Set the air conditioning system to recirculated air mode. (→P. 190, 197)
The air conditioning filter case cannot be removed with the system in the outside air mode.

**STEP 2** Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK” position.

**STEP 3** Open the glove box. (→P. 210)

**STEP 4** Remove the filter cover.

**STEP 5** Remove the filter case.

**STEP 6** Remove the air conditioning filter from the filter case and replace it with a new one.
The “UP” marks shown on the filter and the filter case should be pointing up.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Checking interval
Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the “Owner’s Manual Supplement” or “Scheduled Maintenance”.)

■ If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically
The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

⚠️ NOTICE

■ When using the air conditioning system
Make sure that a filter is always installed. Using the air conditioning system without a filter may cause damage to the system.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Wireless remote control battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is depleted. As the cover opening may be damaged easily, it is recommended that the battery be replaced by your Lexus dealer.

You will need the following items:

- Flathead screwdriver (tip width: approximately 0.32 in. [8.0 mm], tip thickness: approximately 0.04 in. [1.0 mm])
- Lithium battery (CR2016)

Replacing the battery

1. Remove the cover.
   - To prevent damage to the wireless remote control, cover the tip of the screwdriver with tape or a rag.

2. Remove the module.

3. Open the case cover using a coin protected with tape etc. and remove the depleted battery.
   - Insert a new battery with the “+” terminal facing up.
■ Use a CR2016 lithium battery

● Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, local electrical appliance shops or camera stores.
● Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
● Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

■ If wireless remote control battery is depleted

The following symptoms may occur:
● The wireless remote control will not function properly.
● The operational range is reduced.

⚠️ CAUTION

■ Removed battery and other parts

Keep away from children. These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

⚠️ NOTICE

■ For normal operation after replacing the battery

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.
● Always work with dry hands. Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
● Do not touch or move any other components inside the remote control.
● Do not bend either of the battery terminals.
Checking and replacing fuses

If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

**STEP 1** Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK” position.

**STEP 2** Open the fuse box lid.

**Engine compartment**

Push the tabs in and lift the lid off.

**Driver's side instrument panel**

Remove the lid.

**Passenger's side instrument panel**

Remove the lid.
Luggage compartment

Remove the lid.

**STEP 3** After a system failure, see “Fuse layout and amperage ratings” (→P. 290) for details about which fuse to check.

**STEP 4** Remove the fuse with the pull-out tool.

The pull-out tool is in the fuse box of the engine compartment.

**STEP 5** Check if the fuse has blown.

Type A

1. Normal fuse
2. Blown fuse

Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Type B

1 Normal fuse
2 Blown fuse

Contact your Lexus dealer.
**Fuse layout and amperage ratings**

**Engine compartment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 INJ</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, noise filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 A/PMP HTR</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 EFI</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 A/F HTR</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 SPARE</td>
<td>30 A</td>
<td>Spare fuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 SPARE</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Spare fuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 SPARE</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Spare fuse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>CDS FAN</td>
<td>40 A Electric cooling fan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>WIP</td>
<td>40 A Windshield wiper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>ABS MTR1</td>
<td>50 A Electronically controlled brake system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>ACC CUT</td>
<td>7.5 A Starter system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>H-LP RH</td>
<td>15 A Headlight low/high beam (right-side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>H-LP LH</td>
<td>15 A Headlight low/high beam (left-side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>E/G IG</td>
<td>5 A Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, ASG (Automated Sequential Gearbox)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>IGN</td>
<td>10 A Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, SRS airbag system, electronically controlled brake system, electric power control system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>EFI NO.2</td>
<td>10 A Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>EFI NO.1</td>
<td>10 A Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>P/I</td>
<td>50 A INJ, A/PMP HTR, EFI, A/F HTR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>ST</td>
<td>30 A Starter system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>MAIN</td>
<td>30 A H-LP RH, H-LP LH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>ABS MTR2</td>
<td>50 A Electronically controlled brake system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>F/PMP</td>
<td>30 A Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>23 IG2</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>IGN, E/G IG, ECU-IG2, GAUGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 D/C CUT</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>MPX-B, DOME, P-MPX-B (for suppressing parasitic current)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 HORN</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>Horn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 ETCS-RH</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27 ETCS-LH</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 BI XENON</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Headlight low/high beams</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Driver’s side instrument panel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>D-P/W</td>
<td>20 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>D-PWR SEAT</td>
<td>30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>DRLCK ALT</td>
<td>25 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>RLY SIG</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>OBD</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>AM1</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>D-S/HTR</td>
<td>15 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>D-ACC</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>R/MIR</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>D-IG1-1</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>D-IG1-4</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>D-IG1-2</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Fuse 1**: D-P/W (20 A) - Power window (driver’s side)
- **Fuse 2**: D-PWR SEAT (30 A) - Power seat (driver’s side)
- **Fuse 3**: DRLCK ALT (25 A) - Main body ECU
- **Fuse 4**: RLY SIG (5 A) - PANEL
- **Fuse 5**: OBD (10 A) - On-board diagnosis
- **Fuse 6**: AM1 (5 A) - D-ACC, P-ACC, CDS FAN, WIP, WASH, MIR HTR, D-S/HTR, P-S/HTR, D-IG1-1, D-IG1-2, D-IG1-3, D-IG1-4, P-IG1-1, P-IG1-2, P-IG1-3, P-IG1-4, RR-IG1
- **Fuse 7**: D-S/HTR (15 A) - Seat heater (driver’s side)
- **Fuse 8**: D-ACC (5 A) - Main body ECU
- **Fuse 9**: R/MIR (10 A) - Outside rear view mirrors
- **Fuse 10**: D-IG1-1 (5 A) - CAN gateway ECU
- **Fuse 11**: D-IG1-4 (5 A) - Seat heater (driver’s side)
- **Fuse 12**: D-IG1-2 (5 A) - Main body ECU, rear hatch, EPS (Electric Power Steering), tire pressure warning system, charging system, turn signal lights, emergency flashers
### 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13 D-IG1-3</td>
<td>5 A</td>
<td>Electronically controlled brake system, VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 ABS MAIN D2</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Electronically controlled brake system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 ABS MAIN D1</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Electronically controlled brake system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 STOP</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, electronically controlled brake system, ASG (Automated Sequential Gearbox), stop/tail lights, high mounted stoplight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 DRLCK BAT</td>
<td>25 A</td>
<td>Main body ECU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 HAZ</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Turn signal lights, emergency flashers, gauges and meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 AM2</td>
<td>5 A</td>
<td>IGN, E/G IG, EFI NO.1, EFI NO.2, ECU-IG2, GAUGE, ASG-IG2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 PANEL</td>
<td>5 A</td>
<td>Interior lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 DOME</td>
<td>5 A</td>
<td>Interior lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 MPX-B</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, main body ECU, rear hatch, power seat (driver’s side), gauges and meters, VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Passenger’s side instrument panel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>P-PWR SEAT</td>
<td>30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>P-P/W</td>
<td>20 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>DISPLAY2</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>DISPLAY1</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>A/C</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>P-ACC</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>P-CIG</td>
<td>15 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>P-IG1-4</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>P-IG1-1</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>P-IG1-3</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>P-IG1-2</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>ABS MAIN P1</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>ABS MAIN P2</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse</td>
<td>Ampere</td>
<td>Circuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>PMG</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>RAD NO.1</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>MAYDAY</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>P-S/HTR</td>
<td>15 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>MIR HTR</td>
<td>15 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>P-MPX-B</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>GAUGE</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>ECU-IG2</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Luggage compartment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>VSSR</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>RR-IG1</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>WASH</td>
<td>20 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>F/OPN</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>TAIL</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>RR FOG</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>AMP RH</td>
<td>30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>AMP LH</td>
<td>30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>OIL PMP</td>
<td>25 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>RR ECU-B</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>ASG-IG2</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
After a fuse is replaced

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer for inspection.
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If there is an overload in the circuits

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

---

CAUTION

To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire

Observe the following precautions. Failing to do so may cause damage, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent. Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix. This can cause extensive damage or even fire.
- Do not modify the fuses or the fuse box.

---

NOTICE

Before replacing fuses

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.
Due to their positioning, the light bulbs may be difficult to replace. If a light bulb needs replacing, contact your Lexus dealer.

Front

Headlight low/high beams and daytime running lights (Canada only)

Front turn signal lights

Front side marker lights

Parking lights

Rear

High mounted stoplight

Stop/tail lights

Rear side marker lights

Rear turn signal lights

License plate lights

Back-up lights

Light bulb types

→ P. 367
Discharge headlights
If voltage to the discharge bulbs is insufficient, the bulbs may not come on, or may go out temporarily. The discharge bulbs will come on when normal power is restored.

LED light bulbs
The following lights consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced:

- Parking lights
- Stop/tail lights
- High mounted stoplight

Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens
Contact your Lexus dealer for more information in the following situations. Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction.

- Large drops of water are built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

CAUTION

Handling lights and bulbs
- Do not touch the lights or bulbs while they are on or immediately after they have been turned off. Doing so may result in burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. Hold the bulb by the plastic or metal portion. If the bulb is scratched or dropped it may blow out or crack.

Discharge headlights
- Do not touch the high-intensity discharge headlight’s high voltage socket when the headlights are turned on. An extremely high voltage of 30000 V will be discharged and could result in serious injury or death by electric shock.
- Do not attempt to take apart or repair the discharge headlight bulbs, connectors, power supply circuits, or related components. Doing so could result in electric shock and serious injury or death.
5-1. Essential information

- Emergency flashers.............. 302
- If your vehicle needs to be towed.......................... 303
- If you think something is wrong............................. 308
- Fuel pump shut off system.................................. 309
- Event data recorder................................. 310

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

- If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds... .......................... 312
- If a warning message is displayed.................................. 322
- If you have a flat tire........................................ 332
- If the engine will not start .... 343
- If you lose your keys/wireless remote control transmitter .......... 344
- If the parking brake cannot be released............... 345
- If the vehicle battery is discharged............................ 348
- If your vehicle overheats ..... 351
- If the vehicle becomes stuck........................................ 354
- If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency....................... 355
Emergency flashers

Use the emergency flashers if the vehicle malfunctions or is involved in an accident.

Press the switch to flash all the turn signal lights. To turn them off, press the switch once again.

⚠️ NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the emergency flashers on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
5-1. Essential information

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed and loaded/unloaded by your Lexus dealer or a commercial towing service, using a flat-bed truck. Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

Before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer before towing.

- The engine is running but the vehicle will not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

Emergency towing

If a flatbed truck is not available, in an emergency your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing eyelet. This should only be attempted on hard, surfaced roads for short distances at low speeds. A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle’s wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.
Taking out the towing eyelet and screwdriver

STEP 1
Open the rear hatch and remove the cover.

STEP 2
Release the belt and take out the tool bag.
Take the towing eyelet and screwdriver out of the tool bag.
Installing the towing eyelet

Remove the eyelet cover using a flathead screwdriver.

To protect the bodywork, place a rag between the screwdriver and the vehicle body, as shown in the illustration.

Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten securely by hand.
Using a flatbed truck

Use a flatbed truck suitable for vehicles with low ground clearance. To prevent body damage, do not tow with a wheel-lift or sling type truck. We recommend having your Lexus dealer or a commercial towing service load and unload the vehicle whenever possible.

■ Before loading the vehicle on a flatbed truck
  Deactivate the tilt sensor. (→P. 56)

■ After the vehicle is loaded

STEP 1 Select Neutral, apply the parking brake and turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK” position.
  Use wheel chocks for all 4 wheels to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

STEP 2 Secure the vehicle by strapping the tires to the deck of the tow truck as shown.
Emergency towing procedure

**STEP 1** Start the engine.
If the engine cannot be started, turn the ignition switch to the “ACC” or “ON” position.

**STEP 2** With Neutral selected, release the parking brake.

When using the towing eyelet

Use the towing eyelet only when your vehicle is being towed.
Do not use the towing eyelet to tow another vehicle or to tie down your vehicle on a flatbed truck.

**CAUTION**

Caution while towing

- Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.
  Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which place excessive stress on the emergency towing eyelet and the cable or chain. Always be cautious of the surroundings and other vehicles while towing.

- If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering may not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

Installing towing eyelet to the vehicle

Make sure that towing eyelet is installed securely.
If not securely installed, towing eyelet may come loose during towing. This may lead to accidents that cause serious injury or even death.

**NOTICE**

To prevent vehicle damage

Observe the following precautions when using a flatbed truck:

- Do not drive over wheel chocks, as doing so may damage the tires.
- Do not tie down the vehicle over any parts other than the tires (do not use parts such as the suspension).
If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ Visible symptoms
  ● Fluid leaks under the vehicle
    (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
  ● Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
  ● Engine coolant temperature gauge indicates that the temperature is higher than normal.

■ Audible symptoms
  ● Changes in exhaust sound
  ● Excessive tire squeal when cornering
  ● Strange noises related to the suspension system
  ● Pinging or other noises related to the engine

■ Operational symptoms
  ● Engine missing, stumbling or running roughly
  ● Appreciable loss of power
  ● Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
  ● Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
  ● Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor
5-1. Essential information

Fuel pump shut off system

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or when an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops the supply of fuel to the engine.

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

**STEP 1** Turn the ignition switch to the “ACC” or “LOCK” position.
**STEP 2** Restart the engine.

---

**NOTICE**

**■ Before starting the engine**

Inspect the ground under the vehicle.
If you find that fuel has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.
This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle’s systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts (seat belts) were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

NOTE:
EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.
To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds...

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights comes on or flashes. If a light comes on or flashes, but then goes off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system. However, if this continues to occur, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

**Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.**

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning light</th>
<th>Warning light/Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BRAKE (U.S.A.)</td>
<td>Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Low brake fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Malfunction in the brake system</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Stop the vehicle immediately.

The following warnings indicate the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning light</th>
<th>Warning light/Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Charging system warning light</td>
<td>Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle’s charging system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil temperature warning light (warning buzzer)</td>
<td>Indicates that the engine oil temperature is too high.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine coolant temperature warning light (warning buzzer)</td>
<td>Indicates that the engine coolant temperature is too high. (→P. 351)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Failing to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning light</th>
<th>Warning light/Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Malfunction indicator lamp" /></td>
<td><strong>Malfunction indicator lamp</strong>  &lt;br&gt; Indicates a malfunction in:  &lt;br&gt; • The electronic engine control system;  &lt;br&gt; • The electronic throttle control system; or  &lt;br&gt; • The electronic transmission control system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="SRS warning light" /></td>
<td><strong>SRS warning light</strong>  &lt;br&gt; Indicates a malfunction in:  &lt;br&gt; • The SRS airbag system; or  &lt;br&gt; • The seat belt pretensioner system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="ABS warning light" /></td>
<td><strong>ABS warning light</strong>  &lt;br&gt; Indicates a malfunction in:  &lt;br&gt; • The ABS; or  &lt;br&gt; • The brake assist system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Brake system warning light" /></td>
<td><strong>Brake system warning light</strong>  &lt;br&gt; Indicates a malfunction in:  &lt;br&gt; • The electronically controlled brake system; or  &lt;br&gt; • The electric parking brake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Electric power steering system warning light" /></td>
<td><strong>Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)</strong>  &lt;br&gt; Indicates a malfunction in the EPS system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Slip indicator" /></td>
<td><strong>Slip indicator</strong>  &lt;br&gt; Indicates a malfunction in:  &lt;br&gt; • The VSC system;  &lt;br&gt; • The TRAC system; or  &lt;br&gt; • The hill-start assist control system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Follow the correction procedures.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light goes off.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning light</th>
<th>Warning light/Details</th>
<th>Correction procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ![Door Icon](image) | Open door warning light (warning buzzer)*1  
Indicates that a door is not fully closed. | Check that both side doors are closed. |
| ![Fuel Icon](image) | Low fuel level warning light  
Indicates remaining fuel is approximately 2.9 gal. (11 L, 2.4 Imp. gal.) or less | Refuel the vehicle. |
| ![Belt Icon](image) (On the instrument cluster) | Driver’s seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2  
 Warns the driver to fasten their seat belt. | Fasten the seat belt. |
| ![Belt Icon](image) (On the center panel) | Passenger’s seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2  
 Warns the passenger to fasten their seat belt. | Fasten the seat belt. |
3-2. Steps to take in an emergency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning light</th>
<th>Warning light/Details</th>
<th>Correction procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tire pressure</td>
<td>When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure</td>
<td>Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. The light will turn off after a few minutes. In case the light does not turn off even if the tire inflation pressure is adjusted, have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system</td>
<td>Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master warning</td>
<td>A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on and flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction.</td>
<td>→P. 322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Open door warning buzzer

→P. 327

*2: Driver’s and passenger’s seat belt reminders buzzer

The driver’s and passenger’s seat belt reminders sound to alert the driver and passenger that their seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds intermittently for 10 seconds after the vehicle has reached a speed of 12 mph (20 km/h). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.
If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving

First check the following:

- Is the fuel tank empty?
  If it is, fill the fuel tank immediately.

- Is the fuel tank cap loose?
  If it is, tighten it securely.

The light will go off after taking several driving trips.
If the light does not go off even after several trips, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Electric power steering system warning light

When the battery is low or when the voltage drops temporarily, the electric power steering system warning light may come on.

Passenger detection sensor and passenger seat belt reminder

- If luggage is placed on the passenger seat, the passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.

- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

When the tire pressure warning light comes on

Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level. Pushing the tire pressure warning reset switch will not turn off the tire pressure warning light. After the tire inflation pressure is adjusted, it may take a few minutes for the tire pressure warning light to go off.

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks or tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

■ If the tire pressure warning system is not functioning

The tire pressure warning system will be disabled in the following conditions:
(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)
- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer
- If the tire inflation pressure is 73 psi (500 kPa, 5.1 kgf/cm² or bar) or higher

The tire pressure warning system may be disabled in the following conditions:
(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)
- If electronic devices or facilities using similar radio wave frequencies are nearby
- If a radio set at similar frequencies is in use in the vehicle
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, particularly around the wheels or wheel housings
- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used (Even if you use Lexus wheels, the tire pressure warning system may not work properly with some types of tires.)
- If a tire is repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit

■ If the tire pressure warning light comes on after flashing frequently for 1 minute

If the tire pressure warning light comes on after flashing frequently for 1 minute when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer

The vehicle speed linked seat belt reminder buzzer can be disabled.
(Customizable features → P. 383)
When trouble arises

Steps to take in an emergency

CAUTION

When the electric power steering system warning light comes on
The steering wheel may become extremely heavy. If the steering wheel becomes heavier than usual when operating, hold firmly and operate using more force than usual.

If the tire pressure warning light comes on
Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause a loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

● Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.

● If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If a tire is flat, temporarily repair the tire using the emergency tire puncture repair kit (→P. 332) and then have the tire repaired or replaced by the nearest Lexus dealer.

● Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur
The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

**CAUTION**

**Maintenance of the tires**

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label (tire and load information label). (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label [tire and load information label], you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS-tire pressure warning system) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle’s handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver’s responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light).

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light). When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) to continue to function properly.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTICE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ■ Precaution when installing a different tire  
When a tire of a different specification or maker is installed, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly. |
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning message is displayed

If a warning message is shown on the meter, stay calm and perform the following actions:

Normal display

1 Master warning light
Comes on or flashes to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the meter.

2 Warning message
If multiple warning messages occur, they will be shown alternately.
Menu display

1 Master warning light
   Comes on or flashes to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the meter.

2 Warning message
   If multiple warning messages occur, they will be shown alternately.

3 “Warning”
   Can be selected when a message is shown while in the menu display. Select “Warning” with the control pad and press right to display the warning message list.

4 Warning message list
   Lists up to four currently occurring warning messages.
   If five or more warning messages have occurred, press up or down on the control pad to scroll through them.
   Once the warning is resolved, the corresponding message will disappear.

If any of the warning lights turns on again after performing the following actions, contact your Lexus dealer.
Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

A buzzer sounds and a warning message is shown on the meter. The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Check brake system | Indicates the following:  
  • The brake fluid level is low; or,  
  • The brake system is malfunctioning. |

Stop the vehicle immediately.

A buzzer sounds and a warning message is shown on the meter. The following warnings indicate the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Engine oil pressure low | Indicates an abnormal engine oil pressure.  
  The warning light may turn on if the engine oil pressure is too low. |
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

A buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the meter. Failure to investigate the cause of the following messages may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Check parking brake system" /></td>
<td>Indicates a malfunction in the parking brake system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Parking brake inoperable" /></td>
<td>Indicates that parking brake operation is restrained. May come on if the parking brake cannot be operated due to a malfunction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Check transmission system" /></td>
<td>Indicates a malfunction in the transmission system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td>Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Transmission oil cooler malfunction" /></td>
<td>Indicates a malfunction in the transmission oil cooler system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Check power control system" /></td>
<td>Indicates a malfunction in the charging system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Brake Pad Wear" /></td>
<td>Indicates brake pad wear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reminds the driver to have the brake pads changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Check wiper system" /></td>
<td>Indicates a malfunction in the wiper system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>May come on if the wiper motor is malfunctioning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Failure of active rear wing" /></td>
<td>Indicates a malfunction in the active rear wing system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Follow the correction procedures.

A buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the meter. After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the message goes off.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Correction procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>Indicates that either or both side doors are not fully closed. The system also indicates which doors are not fully closed. Flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that either or both side doors are not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]).</td>
<td>Make sure that both side doors are closed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>Indicates that the hood is not fully closed. Flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that hood is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]).</td>
<td>Close the hood.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Correction procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Image of car with rear hatch open" /></td>
<td>Indicates that the rear hatch is not fully closed. Flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that the rear hatch is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]).</td>
<td>Close the rear hatch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parking brake is engaged</strong></td>
<td>![Flash symbol] (Flashes) <img src="U.S.A." alt="PARK" /> <img src="Canada" alt="P" /></td>
<td>Indicates that the parking brake is still engaged. May come on if the vehicle reaches a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parking brake overheat</strong></td>
<td>![Flash symbol] (Flashes) <img src="U.S.A." alt="PARK" /> <img src="Canada" alt="P" /> <img src="Canada" alt="P" /> (Flashes)</td>
<td>Indicates that parking brake operation is restrained. Parking brake operation is restrained to protect the system from overheating due to repeated operation of the parking brake.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Correction procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Washer fluid low</td>
<td>Indicates that the washer fluid level is low.</td>
<td>Add washer fluid. (→P. 264)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil level low Check oil level</td>
<td>Indicates that engine oil level is low.</td>
<td>Check the level of engine oil (→P. 132), and add if necessary (→P. 257).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oil maintenance required</td>
<td>Indicates that the engine oil needs to be changed.</td>
<td>Have the engine oil changed at your Lexus dealer. (Also have the oil maintenance function reset.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temp low Engine cannot be started</td>
<td>Indicates that the engine coolant temperature or engine oil temperature is below -13°F (-25°C).</td>
<td>Start the engine when the engine coolant or engine oil temperature reaches -11°F (-24°C) or higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery low Start the engine</td>
<td>Indicates that the battery voltage is low.</td>
<td>Start the engine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spark plugs dirty Run on freeway or clean plugs</td>
<td>Indicates that the spark plugs are dirty or carbon fouled.</td>
<td>Drive the vehicle at 2400 rpm or higher for a total duration of several minutes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Correction procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Transmission pump overheat Shift rejected" /></td>
<td>Indicates that gear shifting is restrained temporarily (due to overheating of the transmission pump). Gear shifting is not possible while this message is displayed.</td>
<td>Refrain from operating the paddle shift switches for 5 or more seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Transmission temp low Shift restricted" /></td>
<td>Indicates that gear shifting is restrained (due to low transmission fluid temperature). Gear shifting is not possible while this message is displayed.</td>
<td>Warm up the vehicle by driving it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Clutch overheat" /></td>
<td>Indicates that the clutch has temporarily overheated.</td>
<td>Stop the vehicle in a safe place and select Neutral. Allow the clutch to cool down by allowing the vehicle to idle for approximately 15 minutes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

■ To prevent the clutch from overheating
  ● Do not use the accelerator pedal to hold the vehicle on uphill inclines in an attempt to prevent the vehicle from moving backward.
  ● On uphill inclines, observe the following whenever possible:
    • Maintain a safe distance from the vehicle ahead and avoid frequent starts.
    • Avoid using AUTO driving mode on uphill inclines. This will help to avoid unnecessary gear changes.

■ If “Battery low Electrical equipment operation is limited” is displayed
  The battery voltage is low. The operation of the air conditioning system, transmission pump and other power-consuming components may be temporarily limited until the battery is recharged.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If you have a flat tire

The LFA is equipped with an emergency tire puncture repair kit, not a spare tire.
A puncture caused by a nail or screw passing through the tire tread can be repaired temporarily with the emergency tire puncture repair kit. When replacing the repaired tire, consult your Lexus dealer or tire dealer.

■ Before repairing the tire
  ● Stop the vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface.
  ● Set the parking brake.
  ● Select 1st gear or Reverse.
  ● Stop the engine.
  ● Turn on the emergency flashers.

■ Contents

1 Compressor
2 Sealant
3 Injection hose
4 Extension hose (for extracting the sealant)
5 Valve core tool
6 Valve core (spare)
7 Stickers
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Taking out the emergency tire puncture repair kit

**STEP 1**
Open the rear hatch and remove the cover.

**STEP 2**
Release the belt and take out the tool bag.
Take the emergency tire puncture repair kit out of the tool bag.
Before putting the sealant into use

Check the degree of tire damage before making use of the sealant in the emergency tire puncture repair kit.

A tire should only be repaired if the damage is caused by a nail or screw passing through the tire tread.

Do not remove the nail or screw from the tire.

Move the vehicle until the area of the puncture, if known, is positioned at the bottom, in contact with the ground. This allows the sealant to plug the damaged area more effectively.

Emergency repair with the sealant in the kit is not possible in the following cases. Contact your Lexus dealer.

- When the wheel is damaged
- When two or more tires have been punctured
- When the tire is damaged due to driving without sufficient tire inflation pressure
- When the tire is visibly disengaged from the wheel
- When the tire lost air pressure due to a crack or damage in the tire sidewall
- When the cut or piercing to the tread is 0.16 in. (4 mm) or more
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

**Emergency repair method**

**STEP 1**
Remove the cap from the valve.

**STEP 2**
Bring the protruding part of the valve core tool into contact with the valve and fully discharge the air.

**STEP 3**
Pull out the valve core by turning it counterclockwise using the valve core tool.

**STEP 4**
Shake the sealant bottle several times and remove the cap of the sealant bottle.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

STEP 5
Connect the injection hose by screwing it onto the bottle. As it is screwed in, the aluminum seal on the bottle will be torn.

STEP 6
Remove the plug from the injection hose.

STEP 7
Connect the injection hose to the valve.

STEP 8
Inject the sealant that is in the bottle. Hold and tilt the bottle, then squeeze sealant out of the bottle as shown.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

**STEP 9**
Attach the sticker as shown.

**STEP 10**
Remove the injection hose from the valve and screw the valve core into the valve securely by turning it clockwise with the valve core tool.

**STEP 11**
Connect the air compressor hose by threading it onto the valve.

**STEP 12**
Connect the compressor power plug to the power outlet in the glove box.

**STEP 13**
Turn the ignition switch to the “ACC” position.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

**STEP 14** Check the specified inflation pressure. (→P. 366)

**Turn the compressor switch “ON” and fill the tire with air until the specified inflation pressure is reached.**

**STEP 15**

**STEP 16** Turn the switch “OFF” when the pressure gauge connected to the hose reads the specified pressure.

If the inflation pressure is not attained within 8 minutes, emergency repair is not possible due to severe damage. Contact your Lexus dealer.

**STEP 17** After completely filling the tire with air, disconnect the hose from the tire valve and the compressor power plug from the power outlet.

**STEP 18** To spread the liquid sealant evenly in the tire, immediately drive for about 3 miles (5 km) or 10 minutes.

Drive cautiously at a moderate speed, avoiding sudden starts, sudden braking, and abrupt steering maneuvers.

**STEP 19** After driving about 3 miles (5 km) or 10 minutes, stop your vehicle in a safe place and reconnect the compressor.
When trouble arises

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Read the inflation pressure on the pressure gauge.

If the pressure is 18 psi (130 kPa, 1.3 kgf/cm² or bar) or above:
Fill the tire with air using the compressor until the specified inflation pressure is reached.

If the pressure is less than 18 psi (130 kPa, 1.3 kgf/cm² or bar):
The emergency repair that has been performed is not safe for use as damage to the tire is too severe. Do not continue to drive the vehicle. Contact your Lexus dealer.

Store the kit and then attach the sticker as shown.

Taking precautions to avoid sudden braking and sharp turns, drive carefully at under 50 mph (80 km/h) to the nearest Lexus dealer or tire dealer for tire repair or replacement.
Steps to take in an emergency

■ Sealant
  ● One tire can be repaired using the bottle of sealant stored in the emergency tire puncture repair kit.
  ● The sealant can be used when the outside temperature is from -22°F (-30°C) to 140°F (60°C).
  ● When the outside temperature is low, the viscosity of the sealant becomes high and it will be more difficult to inject the sealant. In this case, warm the sealant in the vehicle before using it.
  ● The sealant has a limited lifespan. The expiration date is marked on the bottle. The sealant should be replaced before the expiration date. Contact your Lexus dealer.
  ● If the sealant gets on your clothes, it may stain.
  ● After using the sealant, bring the empty bottle of sealant to your Lexus dealer and purchase a new bottle. Keep the new bottle of sealant in your vehicle.

■ Compressor
  ● The compressor is a pneumatic filling type for passenger vehicles.
  ● When the compressor is operating, a loud operating noise will be produced. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ The wheel of a tire that has been repaired
  If you remove the sealant adhering to the wheel with a rag, you can reuse the wheel.

■ The valve of a tire that has been repaired
  ● After a tire is repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter should be replaced.
  ● After a tire is repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit, even if the tire inflation pressure is at the recommended level, the tire pressure warning light may come on/flash.
CAUTION

■ Precaution for children

Keep the emergency tire puncture repair kit out of the reach of children and store it properly.

■ Sealant precautions

● The sealant in the emergency tire puncture repair kit is not for human consumption.
  If the sealant is consumed, drink a large quantity of water and get medical attention immediately.

● If sealant gets in your eyes or on your skin, thoroughly wash with a large quantity of water. If necessary, get medical attention.

■ When fixing the flat tire

● Stop your vehicle in a safe and flat area.

● If force is used to turn the valve core tool while air remains in the tire, special care should be taken because the valve core could fly out.

● Be careful, as sealant may fly out if you shake the bottle with the hose installed.

● If the hose is not securely installed, sealant may leak out when filling.

● Connect the valve and hose securely with the tire installed on the vehicle.

● Be careful handling the compressor, as parts of the compressor get hot during operation. Some parts of the compressor may remain hot after use.

● Do not attach the vehicle speed warning sticker to an area other than the one indicated. If the sticker is attached to an area where an SRS airbag is located, such as the pad of the steering wheel, it may prevent the SRS airbag from operating properly.

■ Driving to spread the liquid sealant evenly

Drive cautiously at a moderate speed, avoiding sudden starts, sudden braking, and abrupt steering maneuvers.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

***NOTICE***

■ Vehicles with a flat tire
- Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair.

■ When performing an emergency repair
- Perform the emergency repair without removing the nail or screw that has punctured the tread of the tire. If the object that has punctured the tire is removed, the repair using the sealant in the emergency tire puncture repair kit may fail.

■ When fixing the flat tire
- Do not put the valve core on dirty ground or in the sand. Store it in a clean place.
- Do not remove the inside cap of the sealant bottle.
- Turn the valve core tool with your hand when screwing it in. If you use another tool in conjunction with the valve core tool, damage may occur.
- Do not operate the compressor continuously for more than 10 minutes. The motor may overheat and be damaged. Let the compressor cool before using it again.

■ Compressor precautions
- The compressor power source should be 12 V DC suitable for vehicle use. Do not connect the compressor to 24 V DC or any other power source.
- The compressor is an oil-less type. Do not lubricate with oil.
- If the compressor does not operate properly or becomes hot, it may be overheated. Turn off the switch and leave the compressor to cool down for at least 30 minutes.
- The compressor is not waterproof. Make sure that the compressor is not exposed to water, such as when it is being used in the rain.
- Do not put the compressor directly onto dusty ground such as sand at the side of the road. If the compressor vacuums up dust etc., a malfunction may occur.
- Do not disassemble or modify the compressor. Do not subject parts such as the air pressure indicator to impacts. This may cause a malfunction.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency
If the engine will not start

If the engine will not start, even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→ P. 98), consider each of the following points.

■ The engine will not start even when the starter motor operates normally.
  One of the following may be the cause of the problem.
  ● There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle’s tank.
    Refuel the vehicle.
  ● The engine may be flooded.
    Try to restart the engine once more following correct starting procedures. (→ P. 98)
  ● There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→ P. 53)

■ The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.
  One of the following may be the cause of the problem.
  ● The battery may be discharged. (→ P. 348)
  ● The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

■ The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.
  One of the following may be the cause of the problem.
  ● One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected.
  ● The battery may be discharged. (→ P. 348)

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency
If you lose your keys/wireless remote control transmitter

■ Keys
New genuine Lexus keys can be made by your Lexus dealer using the other keys and the key number stamped on your key number plate.

However, there may be cases where an additional premium master key cannot be made. For details, ask your Lexus dealer.

■ Wireless remote control transmitter
New genuine wireless remote control transmitters can be purchased and programmed by your Lexus dealer. If a wireless remote control transmitter has been lost, bring the other wireless remote control transmitter when going to pick up the new transmitter.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If the parking brake cannot be released

In the event that the battery is discharged or switch operation does not release the parking brake, the parking brake can be released manually using the procedure below. This procedure should be performed only if necessary, such as in an emergency.

If the switch cannot be operated even when the battery is normal, the parking brake system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ Before releasing the parking brake manually
  ● Select 1st gear or Reverse.
  ● Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK” position.
  ● Check that the parking brake indicator is off.
  ● Chock the tires.

Releasing the parking brake manually

Open the rear hatch and remove the cover.

If the rear hatch cannot be opened with the rear hatch opener switch, use the release cable. (→P. 29)

Release the belt and take out the tool bag.

Take the parking brake release tool and the screwdriver handle out of the tool bag.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

**Install the parking brake release tool into the screwdriver handle.**

**Remove the cover.**

Hold both sides of the bottom edge and raise the cover.

**Insert the tool and press it down firmly while turning it counterclockwise until it stops.**

---

**Manual operation of the parking brake**

The parking brake cannot be set manually.
When trouble arises

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

CAUTION

When releasing the parking brake manually

- Select 1st gear or Reverse, turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK” position and chock the tires.
  Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move, resulting in an accident.
- Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK” position and check that the parking brake indicator is off.
  Failure to do so may cause the system to operate and turn the parking brake release tool that is inserted, resulting in an injury.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency
If the vehicle battery is discharged

The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle’s battery is discharged.
You can call your Lexus dealer, or qualified repair shop.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your Lexus following the steps below.

Open the rear hatch and remove the battery cover.

If the rear hatch cannot be opened with the rear hatch opener switch, use the release cable. (→P. 29)

After removing the positive (+) battery terminal cover and checking that the negative (-) terminal is securely fixed in place, connect the jumper cables in the following order:

1. Positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle
2. Positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle
3. Negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle
4. Negative (-) battery terminal on your vehicle
**STEP 3** Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

**STEP 4** Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the engine of your vehicle.

**STEP 5** Once the vehicle’s engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected. After disconnecting the jumper cables, make sure that the negative (-) battery terminal on your vehicle is fixed securely.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

---

**Starting the engine when the battery is discharged**

- If the gear indicator is not displayed when an attempt is made to start the engine, the engine is not yet ready to start. Depress the brake pedal for several seconds and wait for the gear indicator to appear.
- The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

**To prevent battery discharge**

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

■ To prevent a vehicle fire
When connecting or disconnecting the jumper cables to or from the battery, make sure that they are not in contact with any part made of CFRP (Carbon Fiber Reinforced Plastics). Failure to do so may cause a fire hazard.

■ Avoiding battery fires or explosions
Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery.

● Make sure each jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any part other than the intended terminal.
● Do not allow the + and - clamps of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.
● Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.

■ Battery precautions
The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

● When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
● Do not lean over the battery.
● In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention. Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
● Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
● Do not allow children near the battery.
If your vehicle overheats:

**STEP 1** Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system.

**STEP 2** Check to see if steam is coming out from under the hood.
   - If you see steam:
     - Stop the engine. Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides and then restart the engine.
   - If you do not see steam:
     - Leave the engine running and carefully lift the hood.

**STEP 3** Check to see if the cooling fan is operating.
   - While being careful of hot air and exhaust gases, check by looking through the radiator grilles or by listening to the operating sound.
   - If the fan is operating:
     - Wait until the engine coolant temperature shown on the gauge lowers and then stop the engine.
   - If the fan is not operating:
     - Stop the engine immediately and call your local Lexus dealer.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, check the engine coolant level and inspect the radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

Add engine coolant if necessary. (→P. 362)

Water can be used in an emergency if engine coolant is unavailable.

Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ Overheating

If you observe the following, your vehicle may be overheating.

● The engine coolant temperature gauge flashes or a loss of power is experienced.

● Steam comes out from under the hood.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

⚠️ CAUTION

■ To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle
  ● If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot, causing serious injury such as burns.
  ● Keep hands and clothing away from the drive belt while the engine is running.
  ● Do not loosen the coolant reservoir cap while the engine and radiator are hot. Serious injury, such as burns, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.

⚠️ NOTICE

■ When adding engine coolant
  Wait until the engine has cooled down before adding engine coolant.
  When adding coolant, do so slowly. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency
If the vehicle becomes stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow.

**STEP 1** Set the parking brake, select Neutral and stop the engine.

**STEP 2** Remove the mud, snow, or sand from around the stuck tire.

**STEP 3** Place wood, stones or some other material to help provide traction under the tires.

**STEP 4** Restart the engine.

**STEP 5** Select 1st gear or Reverse, release the parking brake and carefully apply the accelerator to free the vehicle.

Turn off VSC and TRAC if these functions are hampering your attempts to free the vehicle. (→ P.167)

---

**CAUTION**

- **When attempting to free a stuck vehicle**

  If you choose to rock the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear, to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or persons. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

- **When operating the paddle shift switches/reverse selector switch**

  Be careful not to operate the paddle shift switches/reverse selector switch with the accelerator pedal depressed. This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

---

**NOTICE**

- **To avoid damaging the transmission and other components**

  - Avoid spinning the wheels and do not rev the engine.
  - If the vehicle remains stuck after trying these procedures, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

**STEP 1** Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the distance required to slow the vehicle.

**STEP 2** Select Neutral. (→P. 103)

If Neutral is selected

**STEP 3** After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

**STEP 4** Stop the engine.

If Neutral cannot be selected

**STEP 3** Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

**STEP 4** Stop the engine by turning the ignition switch to the “ACC” position.

**STEP 5** Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

Stopping the engine in an emergency

The engine cannot be stopped by pressing the “ENGINE START” switch, as this switch is not designed to stop the engine. If the vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency, make sure to turn the ignition switch to the “ACC” position.
CAUTION

- If the engine has to be turned off while driving
  - If the engine is turned off, the power assist for the brakes and steering may not function, making braking and steering more difficult. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.
  - Never attempt to remove the key, as doing so will lock the steering wheel.
6-1. Specifications
   Maintenance data
      (fuel, oil level, etc.) .............. 358
   Fuel information ..................... 368
   Tire information....................... 371

6-2. Customization
   Customizable features ........ 383

6-3. Initialization
   Items to initialize ................... 386
6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

Vehicle identification

Vehicle identification number
The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel and on the floor behind the right seat.

This number is also on the Certification Label.
Engine number

The engine number is stamped on the bottom of the engine block as shown.
### Engine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>1LR-GUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>10-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bore and stroke</td>
<td>$3.50 \times 3.10$ in. ($88.0 \times 79.0$ mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Displacement</td>
<td>293.2 cu.in. (4805 cm$^3$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive belt tension</td>
<td>Automatic adjustment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Fuel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuel type</th>
<th>Unleaded gasoline only</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Octane rating</td>
<td>91 (Research octane number 96) or higher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel tank capacity (Reference)</td>
<td>19.3 gal. (73 L, 16.1 Imp. gal.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ **NOTICE**

- **Fuel precaution**
  Do not use any fuel other than that specified above. Doing so may cause engine damage.
Lubrication system

### Specified engine oil for the LFA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oil capacity*1 (Amount of oil required for an oil change — reference)</th>
<th>With twin air-cooled oil cooler 18.0 qt. (17.0 L, 15.0 Imp. qt.)</th>
<th>With single air-cooled oil cooler 16.9 qt. (16.0 L, 14.1 Imp. qt.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oil brand*2</td>
<td>“Mobil 1 5W-50”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommended API grade</td>
<td>SM or SN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: The oil filters used are exclusive to the LFA. When the oil is changed, the oil filters should also be replaced.

*2: The lifetime of the vehicle depends greatly on the quality of oil used. The use of “Mobil 1 5W-50” is most suitable for your vehicle and is recommended.

### Engine oil viscosity

- The 5W portion of the oil viscosity rating indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.

- The 50 in 5W-50 indicates the oil viscosity when the oil is at its operating temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

**NOTICE**

### To prevent engine damage

If “Mobil 1 5W-50” is not available, another oil of equivalent quality to “Mobil 1 5W-50” may be used. In this case, do not start the engine if the engine coolant or oil temperature is below 5°F (-15°C), and do not drive the vehicle under extreme load conditions.
## 6-1. Specifications

### Cooling system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Capacity</th>
<th>26.9 qt. (25.5 L, 22.4 Imp. qt.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Coolant type | Use either of the following.  
• “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant”  
• Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology  
Do not use plain water alone. |

### Ignition system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spark plug Make</th>
<th>DENSO PK22HTBR-L8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gap</td>
<td>0.032 in. (0.8 mm)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ NOTICE

- **Platinum-tipped spark plugs**
  
  Use specified spark plugs mentioned above. Do not adjust gap when tuning engine.
### Electrical system

**Battery**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Open voltage* at 68°F (20°C):</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12.6 — 12.8 V Fully charged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.2 — 12.4 V Half charged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.8 — 12.0 V Discharged</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(*: Voltage checked 20 minutes after the engine and all the lights are turned off)

**Charging rates**

5 A max.

### Front counter gear

**Engine oil**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oil brand</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“Mobil 1 5W-50” (also used for the engine)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Rear transaxle

**Oil capacity**

5.6 qt. (5.3 L, 4.7 Imp. qt.)

**Oil type and viscosity**

“Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil LT 75W-85 GL-5” or equivalent

Your Lexus vehicle is filled with “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” at the factory. Use Lexus approved “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” or an equivalent of matching quality that satisfies the above specifications. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

### Clutch & Shift Hydraulic System Fluid

**Fluid type**

“Toyota Genuine Brake Fluid 2500H” (change not needed)
## Brakes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pedal clearance*1</td>
<td>4.0 in. (102 mm) Min.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pedal free play</td>
<td>0.04 — 0.08 in. (1.0 — 2.0 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake pad wear limit</td>
<td>0.08 in. (2.0 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking brake pad wear limit</td>
<td>0.06 in. (1.5 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluid type</td>
<td>FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Minimum horizontal distance between A and B when the pedal is depressed with a force of 45 lbf (200 N, 20 kgf) while the engine is idling.
*2: Upper side of pedal cover
NOTICE

■ Precaution for CCM (Carbon Ceramic Material) brake discs
Be careful not to subject the CCM brake discs to any kind of strong impact. Even if there is no obvious damage, in the following situations, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer:

- If the vehicle is involved in an accident that may affect the suspension and wheels
- If a CCM brake disc sustains an impact during the removal or installation of the wheels
- If the brake pads have worn out and the metal part of the pad is in contact with the CCM brake disc surface

Steering

| Free play     | Less than 0.6 in. (15 mm) |
## Tires and wheels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>265/35ZR20 (95Y), 305/30ZR20 (99Y)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Front and rear tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure) | Front: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm² or bar)  
Rear: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm² or bar)  
Driving at high speeds (above 155 mph [250 km/h]) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law)  
Add 8 psi (50 kPa, 0.5 kgf/cm² or bar) to the front tires and rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall. |
| Wheel size | Front: $20 \times 9\frac{1}{2}J$  
Rear: $20 \times 11\frac{1}{2}J$ |
| Wheel bolt torque | 81 ft\cdot lbf (110 N\cdot m, 11.2 kgf\cdot m) |
## Light bulbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Light Bulbs</th>
<th>Bulb No.</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exterior</strong></td>
<td>Headlight low/high beams</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Front turn signal lights</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Front side marker lights</td>
<td>194</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rear turn signal lights</td>
<td>7440</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rear side marker lights</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Back-up lights</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>License plate lights</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Interior</strong></td>
<td>Luggage compartment light</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Door courtesy lights</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A: D4S discharge bulbs  
B: Wedge base bulbs (amber)  
C: Wedge base bulbs (clear)  
D: Single end bulbs
6-1. Specifications

Fuel information

Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.

Premium unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher is required for optimum engine performance.

At minimum, the gasoline you use should meet the specifications of ASTM D4814 in the U.S.A. and CGSB3.5-M93 in Canada.

- Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline
  To help prevent incorrect fueling, your vehicle has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

- Gasoline quality
  In very few cases, driveability problems may be caused by the brand of gasoline you are using. If driveability problems persist, try changing the brand of gasoline. If this does not correct the problem, consult your Lexus dealer.

- Gasoline quality standards
  - Automotive manufacturers in the U.S.A., Europe and Japan have developed a specification for fuel quality called the World-Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC), which is expected to be applied worldwide.
  - The WWFC consists of four categories that are based on required emission levels. In the U.S., category 4 has been adopted.
  - The WWFC improves air quality by lowering emissions in vehicle fleets, and improves customer satisfaction through better performance.

- Recommendation of the use of gasoline containing detergent additives
  - Lexus recommends the use of gasoline that contains detergent additives to avoid the build-up of engine deposits.
  - All gasoline sold in the U.S.A. contains detergent additives to clean and/or keep clean intake systems.
■ Recommendation of the use of cleaner burning gasoline

Cleaner burning gasoline, including reformulated gasoline that contains oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) is available in many areas.

Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline and appropriately blended reformulated gasoline. These types of gasoline provide excellent vehicle performance, reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

■ Non-recommendation of the use of blended gasoline

● Lexus allows the use of oxygenate blended gasoline where the oxygenate content is up to 10% ethanol or 15% MTBE.

● If you use gasohol in your vehicle, be sure that it has an octane rating no lower than 87.

● Lexus does not recommend the use of gasoline containing methanol.

■ Non-recommendation of the use of gasoline containing MMT

Some gasoline contains an octane enhancing additive called MMT (Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl).

Lexus does not recommend the use of gasoline that contains MMT. If fuel containing MMT is used, your emission control system may be adversely affected.

The malfunction indicator lamp on the instrument cluster may come on. If this happens, contact your Lexus dealer for service.

■ If your engine knocks

● Consult your Lexus dealer.

● You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.
**NOTICE**

**Notice on fuel quality**

- Do not use any fuel other than that specified. If improper fuels are used the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use leaded gasoline. Leaded gasoline can cause damage to your vehicle’s three-way catalytic converters causing the emission control system to malfunction.
- Do not use gasohol other than the type previously stated. Other gasohol may cause fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems.

**Fuel-related poor driveability**

If poor driveability is encountered after using a different type of fuel (poor hot starting, vaporization, engine knocking, etc.), discontinue the use of that type of fuel.

**When refueling with gasohol**

Take care not to spill gasohol. It can damage your vehicle’s paint.
Tire information

Typical tire symbols

1. Tire size

2. TUBELESS or TUBE TYPE
   A tubeless tire does not have a tube and air is directly put into the tire. A tube type tire has a tube inside the tire and the tube maintains the air pressure.

3. Radial tires or bias-ply tires
   A radial tire has “RADIAL” on the sidewall. A tire not marked “RADIAL” is a bias-ply tire.

4. Uniform tire quality grading
   For details, see “Uniform Tire Quality Grading” that follows.
6-1. Specifications

- DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN) (→P. 372)
- Tire ply composition and materials
  Plies are layers of rubber-coated parallel cords. Cords are the strands which form the plies in a tire.
- Load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 273)
- Maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 366)
  This means the pressure to which a tire may be inflated.
- Location of treadwear indicators (→P. 270)
- Summer tires or all season tires (→P. 273)
  An all season tire has “M+S” on the sidewall. A tire not marked “M+S” is a summer tire.

**Typical DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN)**

1. DOT symbol*
2. Tire Identification Number (TIN)
3. Tire manufacturer's identification mark
4. Tire size code
5. Manufacturer’s optional tire type code (3 or 4 letters)
6. Manufacturing week
7. Manufacturing year

*: The DOT symbol certifies that the tire conforms to applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.
6-1. Specifications

Tire size

- Typical tire size information
  The illustration indicates typical tire size.

![Tire size illustration](image)

1. Section width (millimeters)
2. Aspect ratio (tire height to section width)
3. Speed category (alphabet with one letter)
4. Tire construction code (R = Radial, D = Diagonal)
5. Wheel diameter (inches)
6. Load index (2 digits or 3 digits)
7. Speed symbol (alphabet with one letter)

- Tire dimensions

![Tire dimensions illustration](image)

1. Section width
2. Tire height
3. Wheel diameter
6-1. Specifications

**Tire section names**

1. Bead
2. Sidewall
3. Shoulder
4. Tread
5. Belt
6. Inner liner
7. Reinforcing rubber
8. Carcass
9. Rim lines
10. Bead wires
11. Chafer
Uniform Tire Quality Grading

This information has been prepared in accordance with regulations issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration of the U.S. Department of Transportation. It provides the purchasers and/or prospective purchasers of Lexus vehicles with information on uniform tire quality grading.

Your Lexus dealer will help answer any questions you may have as you read this information.

■ DOT quality grades

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

■ Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1 - 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.
Traction AA, A, B, C
The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C, and they represent the tire’s ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete.

A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turning) traction.

Temperature A, B, C
The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire’s resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139.

Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grades for this tire are established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded.
Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.
## Glossary of tire terminology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire related term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accessory weight</td>
<td>The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold tire inflation pressure</td>
<td>Tire pressure when the vehicle has been parked for three hours or more, or has not been driven more than 1 mile or 1.5 km under that condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curb weight</td>
<td>The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment, including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, and if so equipped, air conditioning and additional weight optional engine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum inflation pressure</td>
<td>The maximum cold inflated pressure to which a tire may be inflated, shown on the sidewall of the tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum loaded vehicle weight</td>
<td>The sum of: (a) Curb weight (b) Accessory weight (c) Vehicle capacity weight (d) Production options weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal occupant weight</td>
<td>150 lb. (68 kg) times the number of occupants specified in the second column of Table 1* that follows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Production options weight</td>
<td>The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 5 lb. (2.3 kg) in excess of the standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire related term</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle capacity weight</td>
<td>The rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lb. (68 kg) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Total load capacity)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupant distribution</td>
<td>Distribution of occupants in a vehicle as specified in the third column of Table 1* below</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommended inflation pressure</td>
<td>Cold tire inflation pressure recommended by a manufacturer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rim</td>
<td>A metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rim diameter (Wheel diameter)</td>
<td>Nominal diameter of the bead seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rim size designation</td>
<td>Rim diameter and width</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rim type designation</td>
<td>The industry manufacturer's designation for a rim by style or code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rim width</td>
<td>Nominal distance between rim flanges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle maximum load on the tire</td>
<td>The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight, and dividing by two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle normal load on the tire</td>
<td>The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with Table 1* below), and dividing by two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weather side</td>
<td>The surface area of the rim not covered by the inflated tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bead</td>
<td>The part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bead separation</td>
<td>A breakdown of the bond between components in the bead</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 6-1. Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire related term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bias ply tire</td>
<td>A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at alternate angles substantially less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcass</td>
<td>The tire structure, except tread and sidewall rubber which, when inflated, bears the load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chunking</td>
<td>The breaking away of pieces of the tread or sidewall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cord</td>
<td>The strands forming the plies in the tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cord separation</td>
<td>The parting of cords from adjacent rubber compounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cracking</td>
<td>Any parting within the tread, sidewall, or innerliner of the tire extending to cord material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT</td>
<td>A pneumatic tire with an inverted flange tire and rim system in which the rim is designed with rim flanges pointed radially inward and the tire is designed to fit on the underside of the rim in a manner that encloses the rim flanges inside the air cavity of the tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extra load tire</td>
<td>A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groove</td>
<td>The space between two adjacent tread ribs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Innerliner</td>
<td>The layer(s) forming the inside surface of a tubeless tire that contains the inflating medium within the tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Innerliner separation</td>
<td>The parting of the innerliner from cord material in the carcass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire related term</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intended outboard sidewall</td>
<td>(a) The sidewall that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same molding on the other sidewall of the tire, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) The outward facing sidewall of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light truck (LT) tire</td>
<td>A tire designated by its manufacturer as primarily intended for use on lightweight trucks or multipurpose passenger vehicles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load rating</td>
<td>The maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum load rating</td>
<td>The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum permissible inflation pressure</td>
<td>The maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measuring rim</td>
<td>The rim on which a tire is fitted for physical dimension requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open splice</td>
<td>Any parting at any junction of tread, sidewall, or innerliner that extends to cord material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outer diameter</td>
<td>The overall diameter of an inflated new tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall width</td>
<td>The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passenger car tire</td>
<td>A tire intended for use on passenger cars, multipurpose passenger vehicles, and trucks, that have a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) of 10000 lb. or less.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ply</td>
<td>A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 6-1. Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire related term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ply separation</td>
<td>A parting of rubber compound between adjacent plies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumatic tire</td>
<td>A mechanical device made of rubber, chemicals, fabric and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, provides the traction and contains the gas or fluid that sustains the load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radial ply tire</td>
<td>A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reinforced tire</td>
<td>A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section width</td>
<td>The linear distance between the exteriors of the side-walls of an inflated tire, excluding elevations due to labeling, decoration, or protective bands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sidewall</td>
<td>That portion of a tire between the tread and bead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sidewall separation</td>
<td>The parting of the rubber compound from the cord material in the sidewall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snow tire</td>
<td>A tire that attains a traction index equal to or greater than 110, compared to the ASTM E-1136 Standard Reference Test Tire, when using the snow traction test as described in ASTM F-1805-00, Standard Test Method for Single Wheel Driving Traction in a Straight Line on Snow-and Ice-Covered Surfaces, and which is marked with an Alpine Symbol (pięt) on at least one sidewall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test rim</td>
<td>The rim on which a tire is fitted for testing, and may be any rim listed as appropriate for use with that tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tread</td>
<td>That portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 6-1. Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire related term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tread rib</td>
<td>A tread section running circumferentially around a tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tread separation</td>
<td>Pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treadwear indicators (TWI)</td>
<td>The projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel-holding fixture</td>
<td>The fixture used to hold the wheel and tire assembly securely during testing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*:Table 1 — Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Designated seating capacity, Number of occupants</th>
<th>Vehicle normal load, Number of occupants</th>
<th>Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 through 4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2 in front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 through 10</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2 in front, 1 in second seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 through 15</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2 in front, 1 in second seat, 1 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 through 20</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2 in front, 2 in second seat, 2 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6-2. Customization

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to suit your preferences. Programming these preferences requires specialized equipment and may be performed by your Lexus dealer.

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Default setting</th>
<th>Customized setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wireless remote control (→P. 22)</td>
<td>Unlocking operation</td>
<td>Driver’s door unlocked in one step, both side doors unlocked in two steps</td>
<td>Both side doors unlocked in one step</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Automatic door lock function to be activated if a door is not opened after being unlocked</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if a door is not opened after being unlocked</td>
<td>60 seconds</td>
<td>30 seconds 120 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Operation signal (Emergency flashers)</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Operation signal (Buzzer)</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Door lock buzzer (Buzzer sounding if an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed)</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 6-2. Customization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Default setting</th>
<th>Customized setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Door lock (→P. 25)</td>
<td>Unlocking using a key</td>
<td>Driver’s door unlocked in one step, both side doors unlocked in two steps</td>
<td>Both side doors unlocked in one step</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Speed-detecting automatic door lock function</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Opening driver’s door unlocks both side doors</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power easy access system (→P. 32)</td>
<td>Auto away function</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power windows (→P. 46)</td>
<td>Key linked operation</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Open and close</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wireless remote control linked operation</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Open only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic light control system (→P. 158)</td>
<td>Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off after doors are closed</td>
<td>30 seconds</td>
<td>0 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>60 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>90 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASG (Automated Sequential Gearbox) (→P. 102)</td>
<td>Reverse warning buzzer</td>
<td>Intermittent</td>
<td>Once</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Default setting</td>
<td>Customized setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illumination (→P. 207)</td>
<td>Time elapsed before lights turn off</td>
<td>15 seconds</td>
<td>7.5 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Operation when the doors are unlocked</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Operation after the ignition switch is turned to the “LOCK” position</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat belt reminder (→P. 315)</td>
<td>Vehicle speed linked seat belt reminder buzzer</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6-3. Initialization

Items to initialize

The following items must be initialized for normal system operation in cases such as after maintenance is performed on the vehicle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>When to initialize</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oil maintenance</td>
<td>After changing engine oil</td>
<td>P. 132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire pressure warning</td>
<td>When changing the tire inflation pressure</td>
<td>P. 271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system</td>
<td>by changing traveling speed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For owners

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners................. 388
Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French).......................... 389
SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners (in French).......................... 391
Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. (Toll-free: 1-800-25-LEXUS).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Ave, S.E., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.
Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French)

The following is a French explanation of seat belt instructions extracted from the seat belt section in this manual.

See the seat belt section for more detailed seat belt instructions in English.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Utilisation correcte des ceintures de sécurité</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>● Déroulez la sangle diagonale de telle sorte qu'elle passe bien sur l'épaule, sans pour autant être en contact avec le cou ou glisser de l'épaule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>● Placez la sangle abdominale le plus bas possible sur les hanches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>● Réglez la position du dossier de siège. Asseyez-vous le dos le plus droit possible et calez-vous bien dans le siège.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>● Ne vrillez pas la ceinture de sécurité.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Guide de ceinture de sécurité

Lorsque vous attachez la ceinture de sécurité, assurez-vous toujours qu'elle passe dans le guide.

Il est possible de sortir la ceinture de sécurité de son guide, selon les besoins. (→P. 34)

Entretien et soin

Ceintures de sécurité

Nettoyez avec un chiffon ou une éponge humectée d'eau savonneuse tiède. Profitez de l'occasion pour vérifier régulièrement que les ceintures ne sont pas effilochées, entaillées, ou ne paraissent pas exagérément usées.

ATTENTION

Détérioration et usure des ceintures de sécurité

Inspectez les ceintures de sécurité périodiquement. Contrôlez qu'elles ne sont pas entaillées, effilochées, et que leurs ancrages ne sont pas desserrés. Ne pas utiliser une ceinture de sécurité défectueuse avant qu'elle ne soit remplacée. Une ceinture de sécurité défectueuse n'apporte aucune garantie de protection de l'occupant en cas d'accident.
Sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS conducteur/passager
Participent à la protection de la tête et du thorax du conducteur et du passager contre les chocs avec les éléments de l’habitacle.

2 Sac de sécurité gonflable SRS de genoux pour le conducteur
Contribute à accroître la protection du conducteur.
Sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS de ceintures de sécurité
Participent à la protection du conducteur et du passager.
Composition du système de sacs de sécurité gonflables

1. Sac de sécurité gonflable passager
2. Capteurs de sacs de sécurité gonflables de ceintures de sécurité
3. Calculateur électronique (ECU) de système de détection du passager
4. Capteur du système de détection du passager
5. Contacteurs de boucle de ceinture de sécurité
6. Sacs de sécurité gonflables de ceinture de sécurité
7. Boîtier électronique de sacs de sécurité gonflables
8. Capteur de position du siège conducteur
9. Sac de sécurité gonflable de genoux conducteur
10. Sac de sécurité gonflable conducteur
11. Témoin d’alerte SRS
12. Témoins indicateurs “AIR BAG ON” et “AIR BAG OFF”
13. Capteurs de sacs de sécurité gonflables frontaux et de ceintures de sécurité
Votre véhicule est équipé de SACS DE SÉCURITÉ GONFLABLES INTELLIGENTS (ADVANCED AIRBAGS) conçus selon les normes de sécurité américaines applicables aux véhicules à moteur (FMVSS208). Le système de sacs de sécurité gonflables régule la puissance de déploiement des sacs de sécurité gonflables conducteur et passager avant. Le système de sac de sécurité gonflable conducteur comprend le capteur de position du siège conducteur, etc. Le système de sac de sécurité gonflable passager avant comprend le capteur de classification des occupants du siège passager avant, etc.

Les principaux éléments du système de sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS sont illustrés ci-dessus. Le système de sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS est commandé par un calculateur électronique avec capteur. Ce boîtier intègre un capteur de sécurité et un capteur de sac de sécurité gonflable.

Lorsque la violence du choc frontal ou latéral l’exige, le système de sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS déclenche les dispositifs pyrotechniques de gonflage (générateurs de gaz). Le déploiement rapide des sacs de sécurité gonflables est obtenu au moyen d’une réaction chimique dans les dispositifs pyrotechniques, qui produit un gaz inoffensif permettant d’amortir le mouvement des occupants.
ATTENTION

Précautions avec les sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS

Respectez les précautions suivantes avec les sacs de sécurité gonflables. À défaut, des blessures graves, voire mortelles, pourraient s’ensuivre.

- Le conducteur et tous les passagers à bord du véhicule doivent porter leur ceinture de sécurité correctement.
  Les sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS sont des dispositifs de protection complémentaires aux ceintures de sécurité.

- Le sac de sécurité gonflable SRS conducteur se déploie avec une violence considérable, qui peut être très dangereuse voire mortelle si le conducteur se trouve très près du sac de sécurité gonflable. L’autorité fédérale chargée de la sécurité routière aux États-Unis, la NHTSA (National Highway Traffic Safety Administration) conseille:

  La zone à risque du sac de sécurité gonflable conducteur se situant dans les premiers 2 à 3 in. (50 - 75 mm) de déploiement, vous disposez d’une marge de sécurité confortable en vous plaçant à 10 in. (250 mm) de votre sac de sécurité gonflable conducteur. Cette distance est à mesurer entre le moyeu du volant de direction et le sternum. Si vous êtes assis à moins de 10 in. (250 mm), vous pouvez changer votre position de conduite de plusieurs façons:

  - Reculez votre siège le plus possible, tout en continuant à pouvoir atteindre confortablement les pédales.
  - Inclinez légèrement le dossier du siège.

    Bien que les véhicules puissent être différents les uns des autres, la plupart des conducteurs peuvent s’asseoir à une distance de 10 in. (250 mm), même avec le siège conducteur complètement avancé, simplement en inclinant un peu le dossier de siège. Si vous avez des difficultés à voir la route après avoir incliné votre siège, utilisez un coussin ferme et antidérapant pour vous rehausser ou, si votre véhicule est équipé du réglage en hauteur du siège, remontez-le.

  - Si votre volant de direction est réglable, inclinez-le vers le bas. Cela a pour effet d’orienter le sac de sécurité gonflable en direction de votre poitrine plutôt que de votre tête et de votre cou.

Réglez votre siège selon ces recommandations de la NHTSA, tout en conservant le contrôle des pédales, du volant de direction et la vue des commandes du tableau de bord.
**ATTENTION**

**Précautions avec les sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS**

- Le sac de sécurité gonflable SRS passager se déploie également avec une violence considérable, qui peut être très dangereuse voire mortelle si le passager se trouve très près du sac de sécurité gonflable. Éloignez le siège passager au maximum du sac de sécurité gonflable, et réglez le dossier de siège de sorte à être assis bien droit dans le siège.

- Les nourrissons et les enfants qui ne sont pas correctement assis et/ou protégés peuvent être grièvement blessés ou tués par le déploiement d’un sac de sécurité gonflable. Installez dans un siège de sécurité enfant les enfants trop jeunes pour pouvoir utiliser la ceinture de sécurité. Lexus recommande vivement d’attacher convenablement tous les nourrissons et les enfants. C'est à l’arrière que les nourrissons et les enfants sont les mieux protégés. (→P.76)

- Ne jamais installer un siège de sécurité enfant type dos à la route sur le siège passager, même si le témoin indicateur “AIR BAG OFF” est allumé. En cas d’accident, par la violence et la vitesse de son déploiement, le sac de sécurité gonflable passager peut blesser grièvement, voire tuer l’enfant si vous l’avez installé à la place du passager dans un siège de sécurité enfant type dos à la route.

  - Ne pas s’asseoir sur le bord du siège et ne pas s’appuyer contre la planche de bord.

  - Ne laissez pas un enfant rester debout devant le sac de sécurité gonflable SRS passager ou bien s’asseoir sur les genoux du passager.

  - Ne conduisez pas le véhicule avec quelque chose sur les genoux, et n’autorisez pas non plus le passager à voyager avec quelque chose sur les genoux.
ATTENTION

Précautions avec les sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS

- Ne rien fixer ou disposer sur la planche de bord, la garniture du volant de direction, la ceinture de sécurité ou la partie inférieure du tableau de bord. Au déploiement des sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS conducteur, passager, de ceinture de sécurité et de genoux, tout objet risque de se transformer en projectile.

- Attachez correctement votre ceinture de sécurité.

- Si une housse en vinyle recouvre la partie où le sac de sécurité gonflable SRS de genoux se déploie, veillez à l'enlever.

- Ne pas recouvrir la ceinture de sécurité d'une housse ni d'aucune autre protection dans sa partie où le sac de sécurité gonflable de ceinture de sécurité SRS se déploie.

- Ne pas faire subir de chocs ou de pressions excessives aux parties renfermant les composants des sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS, illustrées P. 63. En effet, cela pourrait entraîner un fonctionnement anormal des sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS.

- Ne touchez aucun composant du système immédiatement après le déclenchement (déploiement) des sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS, car ils sont alors encore très chauds.

- Si vous avez des difficultés à respirer après le déploiement d’un sac de sécurité gonflable SRS, ouvrez une porte ou une vitre pour faire entrer de l’air frais, ou bien descendez du véhicule si cela ne présente pas de danger. Essuyez tout résidu dès que possible afin d’éviter d’éventuelles irritations de la peau.

- Si les parties renfermant les sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS, telles que la garniture centrale du volant de direction et/ou la ceinture de sécurité, apparaissent abîmées ou craquelées, faites-les remplacer par votre concessionnaire Lexus.
**ATTENTION**

- **Modification et mise au rebut des éléments du système de sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS**

Consultez impérativement votre concessionnaire Lexus si vous avez besoin d'intervenir sur votre véhicule ou de procéder à l'une des modifications suivantes. Les sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS risquent de ne pas fonctionner correctement ou de se déployer (gonfler) accidentellement, provoquant ainsi des blessures graves, voire mortelles.

- Installation, dépose, démontage et réparations des sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS.

- Réparation, modification, démontage ou remplacement du volant de direction, du tableau de bord, de la planche de bord ou des ceintures de sécurité.

- Réparation ou modification des ailes avant ou du bouclier avant.

- Installation de chasse-neige, de treuils, etc. sur la calandre (pare-buffle, pare-kangourou, etc.).

- Modifications des suspensions du véhicule.

- Installation d'appareils électroniques tels que radio émetteur/récepteur ou lecteurs CD.

- Aménagements apportés au véhicule pour une personne atteinte d’un handicap physique.
For details of equipment related to the navigation system, such as the audio system, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ABBREVIATIONS</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ABS</td>
<td>Anti-lock Brake System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALR</td>
<td>Automatic Locking Retractor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI</td>
<td>American National Standards Institute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASG</td>
<td>Automated Sequential Gearbox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCM</td>
<td>Carbon Ceramic Material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CFRP</td>
<td>Carbon Fiber Reinforced Plastics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRS</td>
<td>Child Restraint System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECU</td>
<td>Electronic Control Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDR</td>
<td>Event Data Recorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELR</td>
<td>Emergency Locking Retractor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPS</td>
<td>Electric Power Steering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCC</td>
<td>Federal Communications Commission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAWR</td>
<td>Gross Axle Weight Rating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS</td>
<td>Global Positioning System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/M</td>
<td>Emission inspection and maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICNIRP</td>
<td>International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LED</td>
<td>Light Emitting Diode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M + S</td>
<td>Mud and Snow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMT</td>
<td>Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTBE</td>
<td>Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCRP</td>
<td>National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NHTSA</td>
<td>National Highway Traffic Safety Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBD</td>
<td>On Board Diagnostics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABBREVIATIONS</td>
<td>MEANING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRS</td>
<td>Supplemental Restraint System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIN</td>
<td>Tire Identification Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMS</td>
<td>Tire Pressure Warning System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRAC</td>
<td>Traction Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWI</td>
<td>Treadwear indicators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VDIM</td>
<td>Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIN</td>
<td>Vehicle Identification Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSC</td>
<td>Vehicle Stability Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WWFC</td>
<td>World-Wide Fuel Charter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Alphabetical index

“AUTO” driving mode .................. 104
A/C ............................................. 186, 194
ABS........................................... 166
Active rear wing........................... 171
Air conditioning filter ................. 283
Air conditioning system
  Air conditioning filter ............... 283
  Automatic air conditioning
    system.................................. 186, 194
Air gauge ..................................... 278
Airbags
  Airbag operating conditions....... 65
  Airbag precautions for your
    child...................................... 68
  Airbag warning light ............... 314
  General airbag precautions ....... 68
  Locations of airbags.................. 61
  Modification and disposal of
    airbags.................................. 71
Passenger occupant
  classification system.............. 72
Proper driving posture.............. 59
Seat airbag precautions ............. 68
Seat belt airbag operating
  conditions.............................. 65
SRS airbags............................... 61

Alarm........................................... 55
Anti-lock brake system............... 166
ASG.......................................... 102
Audio input*1............................
Audio system................................ 202
Auto away function................... 33
Automatic air conditioning
  system.................................... 186, 194
Automated Sequential Gearbox..... 102
Average fuel consumption......... 118, 132
Average vehicle speed............. 119, 132
AUX port*1
Alphabetical index

B

Back camera ............................................ 163
Back door
   Opener ........................................... 29
Back door light
   Replacing light bulbs ...................... 299
   Wattage ........................................ 367
Back monitor ....................................... 163
Back-up lights
   Wattage ........................................ 367
Battery
   Checking ........................................ 265
   Terminals ...................................... 265
   If the vehicle has a
      discharged battery ..................... 348
   Warning light .............................. 313
   Warning message .......................... 327
   Wireless remote control
      battery .................................... 285
Bottle holder ..................................... 211
Brake
   Braking sound ................................ 90
   CCM brake disc ............................ 365
   Fluid .......................................... 262
   Parking brake ................................ 113
   Warning light ............................. 312, 314
   Warning message .......................... 327
Brake assist ..................................... 166
Brightness control ............................ 147

C

Camera .............................................. 163
Care
   Exterior ........................................ 228
   Interior ....................................... 235
   Seat belts ................................... 236
Cargo capacity .................................... 176
CCM brake disc ................................ 365
Chains ............................................... 181
Child restraint system
   Booster seats, definition .................... 76
   Booster seats, installation .............. 82
   Convertible seats, definition .......... 76
   Convertible seats, installation .......... 81
   Installing CRS with seat belts .......... 81
   Installing CRS with top straps .......... 83
   Passenger occupant
      classification system .................. 72
Child safety
   Active rear wing ............................ 172
   Airbag precautions ........................ 68
   Battery precautions ....................... 268, 350
   Child restraint system ................. 76
   How your child should wear
      the seat belt .......................... 38
   Installing child restraints .............. 80
   Power window precautions ............. 48
   Rear hatch precautions .................. 30
   Removed wireless remote
      control battery precautions ....... 286
   Seat belt guide ............................ 37
   Seat belt precautions ..................... 39
   Seat heater precautions ................. 35

*1: Refer to “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

403
Alphabetical index

Cleaning
- Exterior ................................................... 228
- Interior ..................................................... 235
- Seat belts ................................................ 236

Clock .......................................................... 148

Condenser ............................................... 261

Control pad.............................................. 125

Cooling system
  - Engine overheating ............................ 351

Current fuel consumption.................. 132

Customizable features ...................... 383

Daytime running light system .......... 159

Defogger
  - Rear window ..................................... 201
  - Side mirror ....................................... 201

Dimension*2 .............................................. 183

Dinghy towing ........................................ 183

Discharge headlights
  - Discharge headlight precautions ............ 300
  - Replacing light bulbs ......................... 299
  - Switch .............................................. 158
  - Wattage ............................................ 367

Display
  - Menu display .................................... 124
  - Rear view monitor system .................. 163
  - Trip information ................................ 118
  - Warning message ................................ 322

Do-it-yourself maintenance ............. 247

Door courtesy lights
  - Door courtesy lights .......................... 207
  - Wattage ............................................ 367

Door pockets ........................................ 212

Doors
  - Door lock ......................................... 22, 25
  - Door windows .................................... 46
  - Side mirrors ..................................... 43

Down light ............................................ 207

Driver's seat belt reminder light ..... 315

Driving
  - Correct posture ................................ 59
  - Procedures ....................................... 88

Driving mode ....................................... 104

Driving range ....................................... 119
Electric power steering .......... 166

Emergency, in case of
If the active rear wing will not operate ............... 325
If the engine will not start .............. 343
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened ........................................ 50
If the parking brake cannot be released .................. 345
If the rear hatch cannot be opened ........................................ 29
If the vehicle has a discharged battery ......................... 348
If the warning buzzer sounds .......... 312
If the warning light turns on .......... 312
If the warning message is displayed ......................... 322
If you have a flat tire .......... 332
If you lose your keys ................. 344
If you lose your wireless remote control .................. 344
If you think something is wrong ......................... 308
If your vehicle becomes stuck .... 354
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency .... 355
If your vehicle needs to be towed ......................... 303
If your vehicle overheats .......... 351

Emergency flashers
Switch ........................................ 302

Engine
“ENGINE START” switch .......... 98
Compartment .................................. 256
Engine coolant .................................. 260
Engine coolant temperature gauge ......................... 116
Engine oil pressure gauge .............. 116
Engine oil temperature gauge .......... 116
Engine speed restrictions .............. 90
Engine starting restrictions ............ 181
Hood ........................................ 250
How to start the engine .............. 98
Identification number .................. 358
Idling with five cylinders .............. 90
If the engine will not start .......... 343
Ignition switch ......................... 98
Overheating ..................... 351
Tachometer .................................. 260
Variable red zone ...................... 119
Warning light ....................... 314
Warning message .................. 324, 327

Engine coolant
Capacity ....................... 362
Checking ....................... 260
Coolant type ....................... 362
Engine coolant temperature gauge ......................... 116
Preparing and checking before winter .................. 180

*2: Refer to “Inside the LFA”.

405
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engine coolant temperature gauge</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine immobilizer system</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding engine oil</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacity</td>
<td>361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil consumption</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil pressure gauge</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil temperature gauge</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oil brand</td>
<td>361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning message</td>
<td>324, 327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil level</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil maintenance</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil temperature</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPS</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event data recorder</td>
<td>310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First-aid kit</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flatbed tow truck</td>
<td>306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor jack</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor mats</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washer</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front turn signal lights</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacing light bulbs</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wattage</td>
<td>367</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacity</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel gauge</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel pump shut off system</td>
<td>309</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel tank cap</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information</td>
<td>368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning light</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel consumption</td>
<td>118, 132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel filler door</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel tank</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washer fluid</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel pump shut off system</td>
<td>309</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuses</td>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gauges</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding engine oil</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire pressure</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meter</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gear changes</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glove box</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Alphabetical index

**H**
- Hazard lights ................................................................. 302
- Headlight cleaner ...................................................... 160
- Headlight low/high beams ........................................... 158
- **Headlights**
  - Discharge headlight precautions .................................. 300
  - Replacing light bulbs .............................................. 299
  - Switch .................................................................. 158
  - Wattage .................................................................. 367
- **Heaters**
  - Seat heaters ............................................................. 32
  - Side mirror ............................................................ 201
- High beams ................................................................. 158
- **High mounted stoplight**
  - Replacing light bulbs .............................................. 299
- **Hill-start assist control** ........................................... 166
- **Hood** ................................................................... 250
- **Hooks**
  - Tonneau cover ....................................................... 218
- **Horn** ................................................................... 115
- **Hub socket** ............................................................. 281

**I**
- I/M test ........................................................................ 246
- **Identification**
  - Engine ................................................................. 358
  - Vehicle ................................................................. 358
- **Ignition switch** ........................................................... 98
- **Ignition switch light** .................................................. 207
- **Illuminated entry system** ........................................... 207
- **Illumination** ............................................................. 207
- **Indicator lights** .......................................................... 121
- **Initialization**
  - Items to initialize .................................................... 386
- **Inside rear view mirror** ............................................ 42
- **Interior lights**
  - Down light ............................................................. 207
  - Ignition switch light ............................................... 207
  - Interior lights .......................................................... 207
  - Switch .................................................................. 208
  - Wattage .................................................................. 367
- **Intermittent adjuster** ............................................... 160
Alphabetical index

J  Jack
  Positioning a floor jack....................253

K  Keys
  If you lose your keys.......................344
  If you lose your wireless remote control.............344
  Ignition switch.....................................98
  Key number.............................................20
  Master key..............................................20
  Premium master key...........................20
  Valet key .............................................20
  Wireless remote control key...........22
  Key number..............................................20

L  Language setting............................148
  Lap timer .............................................142
  Launch control.................................174
  License plate lights
    Replacing light bulbs .................299
    Switch............................................158
    Wattage.........................................367
  Light bulbs
    Replacing........................................299
    Wattage.........................................367
  Lights
    Door courtesy lights.......................207
    Down light......................................207
    Emergency flasher switch...........302
    Hazard light switch.......................302
    Headlight switch.........................158
    Ignition switch light.....................207
    Interior light switches...................208
    Luggage compartment light ........367
    Replacing light bulbs .................299
    Turn signal lever.........................112
    Wattage.........................................367
  Load capacity.....................................179
  Luggage compartment
    First-aid kit installation................218
    Tonneau cover .................................218
    Luggage compartment features......218
    Luggage compartment light ..........367
Alphabetical index

Maintenance
  Do-it-yourself maintenance........247
  General maintenance...............242
  Maintenance data...................358
  Maintenance requirements........240
Manual transmission..................102
Master key................................20
Menu display............................124
Meter
  Control pad............................125
  Instrument panel light control....147
  Menu........................................124
  Meters......................................116
Mirrors
  Inside rear view mirror ............42
  Side mirror heater...................201
  Side mirrors............................43
  Vanity mirror..........................213

Navigation system*1
  Needle color setting................148
Neutral
  Selecting Neutral....................103
  Noise from under vehicle..........15

Odometer................................116
Oil
  Engine oil..............................257
  Front counter gear...................363
  Oil level.................................132
  Oil maintenance......................132
Opener
  Fuel filler door......................49
  Hood......................................250
  Rear hatch..............................29
  Washer fluid..........................264
Outside rear view mirrors............43
Outside temperature display..........186
Outside temperature unit.............116, 148
Overheating, Engine..................351

*1: Refer to “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

409
Paddle shift switches ............................ 102
Parking.................................................................. 88
Parking brake
  If the parking brake cannot be released .................. 345
  Parking brake ........................................... 113
  Warning light ........................................... 312, 314
  Warning message ........................................ 324, 325
Passenger occupant classification system .................. 72
Passenger's seat belt reminder light .......................... 315
Parking lights
  Replacing light bulbs .................................. 299
  Switch ...................................................... 158
Penlight ........................................................ 211
Personal lights
  Switch ...................................................... 208
Power easy access system .................................. 33
Power outlet .................................................... 214
Power windows .............................................. 46
Premium master key .......................................... 20
Radiator
  Overheating .............................................. 351
  Radiator grille precaution ................................ 233, 234
Rear hatch
  Opener ...................................................... 29
  Storage precautions ..................................... 29
Rear hatch light
  Wattage .................................................... 367
Rear turn signal lights
  Replacing light bulbs .................................. 299
  Wattage .................................................... 367
Rear view monitor system .................................. 163
Rear window defogger ...................................... 201
Rear wing ...................................................... 171
Replacing
  Air conditioning filter .................................. 283
  Fuses ......................................................... 287
  Light bulbs ................................................. 299
  Wireless remote control battery ......................... 285
Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners .................... 388
Rear view mirror ............................................. 43
Rev indicator .................................................. 129
Rev Peak ....................................................... 148
Reverse selector switch ...................................... 103
Alphabetical index

Safety connect......................................... 219
Seat belts
  Automatic locking retractor........... 38
  Child restraint system
    installation.............................. 80
  Cleaning and maintaining
    the seat belts............................... 236
  Emergency locking retractor........ 37
  How to wear your seat belt........... 36
  How your child should wear
    the seat belt.................................. 38
  Pregnant women,
    proper seat belt use..................... 38
  Reminder light................................. 315
  Seat belt guide.................................. 37
  Seat belt pretensioners................... 37
Seat belt airbags.................................... 61
Seat heaters........................................... 32
Seating capacity.......................................... 179
Seats
  Adjustment ........................................ 32
  Adjustment precautions................... 34
  Child seats/child restraint
    system installation........................ 80
  Cleaning........................................... 235
  Properly sitting in the seat............ 59
  Power easy access system............... 33
  Seat heaters........................................ 32
Service reminder indicators ............. 121
Settings............................................... 148
Shift change......................................... 102
Shift speed level................................. 107
Shift speed selector......................... 107
Side marker lights
  Replacing light bulbs................... 299
  Switch.............................................. 158
  Wattage............................................. 367
Side mirror............................................. 43
  “SOS” button*1.................................. 362
Spark plug............................................ 362
Specifications*2................................. 358
Speed indicator .................................. 126
Speed meter
  Speed indicator.................................. 126
  Speed meter...................................... 116
Start switch.......................................... 98
Starting the engine.............................. 98
Status information.............................. 132
Steering wheel
  Adjustment......................................... 41
Stop/tail lights
  Replacing light bulbs................... 299
  Switch.............................................. 158
Storage feature...................................... 209
Stuck
  If your vehicle becomes stuck........... 354
Sun visors............................................. 213

*1: Refer to “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.
*2: Refer to “Inside the LFA”.

411
Alphabetical index

Switch
“ENGINE START” switch...........98
Active rear wing..........................171
Air conditioning system........186, 194
Audio system............................202
AUTO driving mode button.........104
Control pad...............................125
Driving mode selector switch.....104
Emergency flasher switch..........302
Hazard light switch.....................302
Interior lights...........................208
Light switches..........................158
Paddle shift switches...............102
Parking brake..........................113
Power door lock switch..............25
Power window switch...............46
Reverse selector switch............103
Shift speed selector.................107
Talk switch*1............................191
Turn signal lever......................167
VSC off switch........................112
Wipers and washer switch.........160

Tachometer
Tacho indicator.......................129
Tachometer............................116
Rev Peak.................................148

Tail lights
Replacing light bulbs.................299
Switch.....................................158
Talk switch*1............................191

Theft deterrent system
Alarm......................................55
Engine immobilizer system........53

Timer
Lap timer...............................142

Tire information
Glossary.................................377
Size........................................373
Tire identification number........372
Uniform tire quality grading........375

Tire inflation pressure..........132, 366
Tire inflation pressure gauge.....278

Tires
Air gauge...............................278
Chains.....................................181
Checking.................................270
If you have a flat tire.................332
Inflation pressure.................132, 366
Inflation pressure sensor.........270
Information.............................371
Size.........................................366
Snow tires...............................180
Tire inflation pressure gauge.....278
Tire inflation pressure label......277
Tool bag.................................281, 332
Alphabetical index

Tonneau cover ........................................218
Tool bag ............................................. 281, 332
Total load capacity......................... 179
Towing
  Dinghy towing...............................183
  If your vehicle needs to
    be towed........................................303
  Trailer towing............................ 182
TRAC .......................................................... 166
Traction control ..................................... 166
Transmission shift switches ..........102
Transmitter
  If you lose your wireless
    remote control.........................344
  Key.........................................................22
  Replacing the battery...............285
Transporting the vehicle ............... 303
Trip information.............................118, 132
Trip meter .......................................118
Turn signal lights
  Replacing light bulbs.................299
  Switch ...............................................112
  Wattage .........................................367
Units .....................................................148
Vanity mirror ................................... 213
VDIM .......................................................... 166
Vehicle dynamics integrated
management ........................................ 166
Vehicle identification number ........ 358
Vehicle stability control .............. 166
Vehicle status ................................... 132
Vehicle towing ............................ 182, 183
Vehicle speed indicator ..........126
VSC ............................................................. 166

*1: Refer to “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.
Warning buzzers ................................... 312
Warning lights ................................... 312
Warning messages ................................ 322
Warnings
  Discharge headlights .......................... 300
  Replacing light bulbs ......................... 300
Washer
  Capacity ............................................ 362
  Checking ............................................ 327
  Preparing and checking
    before winter .................................. 180
  Switch ............................................. 160
  Warning message ............................... 327
Washing and waxing ............................ 228
Weight
  Cargo capacity .................................. 176
  Load limits ....................................... 179
  Weight*2
Wheel bolts ....................................... 281
Wheels .............................................. 281
  Care ................................................. 281
  Size ................................................. 366
Window glasses ................................... 46
Windows
  Power windows .................................. 46
  Rear window defogger ....................... 201
  Windshield wipers ............................ 160
  Washer ........................................... 160
Windshield wipers ............................... 160
Wireless remote control key
  If you lose your wireless remote control........ 344
  Key ................................................. 22
  Replacing the battery ....................... 285

*2: Refer to “Inside the LFA”.
What to do if...

What to do if...

- A tire punctures
  - P. 332 If you have a flat tire

- The engine does not start
  - P. 98 Ignition switch
  - P. 343 If the engine will not start
  - P. 53 Engine immobilizer system
  - P. 348 If the vehicle battery is discharged

- The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone
  - P. 351 If your vehicle overheats

- Steam can be seen coming from under the hood

- The parking brake cannot be released
  - P. 345 If the parking brake cannot be released

- The key/wireless remote control is lost
  - P. 344 If you lose your keys/wireless remote control transmitter

- The battery runs out
  - P. 348 If the vehicle battery is discharged

- The doors cannot be locked
  - P. 25 Doors

- The rear hatch cannot be opened
  - P. 29 Rear hatch

- The horn begins to sound
  - P. 55 Alarm
What to do if...

The vehicle is stuck in mud or sand

If the vehicle becomes stuck

The engine oil temperature gauge enters the red zone

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds...

A warning light or indicator light comes on

Warning lights

- Brake system warning light (red) P. 312
- Brake system warning light (amber) P. 314
- ABS warning light P. 314
- SRS warning light P. 314
- Malfunction indicator lamp P. 314
- Driver’s seat belt reminder light P. 315
- Passenger’s seat belt reminder light P. 315
- Master warning light P. 315
- Electric power steering system warning light P. 314
What to do if...

- Open door warning light
- Charging system warning light
- Low fuel level warning light
- Slip indicator
- Tire pressure warning light
- Engine coolant temperature warning light*
- Engine oil temperature warning light*

*: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

- A warning message is displayed
- If a warning message is displayed
**GAS STATION INFORMATION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auxiliary catch lever</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear hatch opener</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel filler door</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hood release lever</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel filler door opener</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire inflation pressure</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fuel tank capacity (Reference)**
- 19.3 gal. (73 L, 16.1 Imp. gal.)

**Fuel type**
- Unleaded gasoline only

**Cold tire inflation pressure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Speed</th>
<th>Front</th>
<th>Rear</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Less than 155 (250) [mph (km/h)]</td>
<td>33 (230, 2.3) [psi (kPa, kgf/cm² or bar)]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>155 (250) or more [mph (km/h)]</td>
<td>41 (280, 2.8) [psi (kPa, kgf/cm² or bar)]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Engine oil brand**
- "Mobil 1 5W-50"